Package: rliger (via r-universe)

October 29, 2026

Version 2.2.1

Date 2025-08-26

Type Package

Title Linked Inference of Genomic Experimental Relationships

Description Uses an extension of nonnegative matrix factorization to identify shared and dataset-specific factors. See Welch J, Kozareva V, et al (2019) <doi:10.1016/j.cell.2019.05.006>, and Liu J, Gao C, Sodicoff J, et al (2020) <doi:10.1038/s41596-020-0391-8> for more details.

Author Joshua Welch [aut], Yichen Wang [aut, cre], Chao Gao [aut], Jialin Liu [aut], Joshua Sodicoff [aut, ctb], Velina Kozareva [aut, ctb], Evan Macosko [aut, ctb], Paul Hoffman [ctb], Ilya Korsunsky [ctb], Robert Lee [ctb], Andrew Robbins [ctb]

Maintainer Yichen Wang <wayichen@umich.edu>

BugReports https://github.com/welch-lab/liger/issues

URL https://welch-lab.github.io/liger/

License GPL-3

LazyData true

RoxygenNote 7.3.2

VignetteBuilder knitr

Encoding UTF-8

LinkingTo Rcpp, RcppArmadillo, RcppProgress

Depends methods, stats, utils, R (>= 3.5)

Imports cli, DelayedArray, dplyr, ggplot2, grid, HDF5Array, hdf5r, leidenAlg (>= 1.1.1), lifecycle, magrittr, Matrix, RANN, Rcpp, RcppPlanc (>= 2.0.0), rlang, S4Vectors, scales, uwot

Suggests AnnotationDbi, circlize, ComplexHeatmap, cowplot, DESeq2, EnhancedVolcano, fgsea, GenomicRanges, ggrepel, gprofiler2, IRanges, knitr, org.Hs.eg.db, plotly, psych, reactome.db, rmarkdown, Rtsne, sankey, scattermore (>= 0.7), Seurat,

SeuratObject, SingleCellExperiment, SummarizedExperiment, testthat, viridis

NeedsCompilation yes

Config/pak/sysreqs libssl-dev zlib1g-dev

Repository https://cran.r-universe.dev

Date/Publication 2025-08-26 18:43:56 UTC

RemoteUrl https://github.com/cran/rliger

RemoteRef HEAD

RemoteSha ee1c9ce6fd617bdfbb310edafd67e2fffa4320c8

Contents

.complexHeatmapDotPlot . . . 5
.ggCellViolin . . . 6
.ggplotLigerTheme . . . 7
.ggScatter . . . 10
.plotHeatmap . . . 12
alignFactors . . . 14
as.liger.dgCMatrix . . . 15
as.ligerDataset.ligerDataset . . . 17
bmmc . . . 19
calcAgreement . . . 19
calcAlignment . . . 21
calcARI . . . 23
calcDatasetSpecificity . . . 24
calcNMI . . . 25
calcPurity . . . 27
ccGeneHuman . . . 28
centroidAlign . . . 29
closeAllH5 . . . 31
commandDiff . . . 31
convertOldLiger . . . 32
coordinate . . . 33
createH5LigerDataset . . . 33
createLiger . . . 35
createLigerDataset . . . 37
deg.marker . . . 38
deg.pw . . . 39
downsample . . . 40
exportInteractTrack . . . 41
factorGSEA . . . 42
getFactorMarkers . . . 44
getProportionMito . . . 46
H5Apply . . . 46
importPBMC . . . 48

imputeKNN . . . 49
is.newLiger . . . 50
isH5Liger . . . 51
liger-class . . . 52
ligerATACDataset-class . . . 62
ligerCommand-class . . . 63
ligerDataset-class . . . 64
ligerMethDataset-class . . . 69
ligerRNADataset-class . . . 69
ligerSpatialDataset-class . . . 70
ligerToSeurat . . . 70
linkGenesAndPeaks . . . 71
louvainCluster-deprecated . . . 73
makeFeatureMatrix . . . 74
makeInteractTrack-deprecated . . . 74
makeRiverplot-deprecated . . . 75
mapCellMeta . . . 76
mergeH5 . . . 77
mergeSparseAll . . . 78
modalOf . . . 79
normalize . . . 79
online_iNMF-deprecated . . . 82
optimizeALS-deprecated . . . 83
optimizeNewData . . . 84
optimizeNewK . . . 86
optimizeNewLambda . . . 87
optimizeSubset . . . 89
pbmc . . . 90
pbmcPlot . . . 91
plot.factorGSEA . . . 91
plotBarcodeRank . . . 93
plotCellViolin . . . 94
plotClusterFactorDot . . . 96
plotClusterGeneDot . . . 98
plotClusterGeneViolin . . . 100
plotDensityDimRed . . . 102
plotDimRed . . . 104
plotEnhancedVolcano . . . 108
plotGeneHeatmap . . . 109
plotGeneLoadings . . . 111
plotGeneViolin . . . 113
plotGODot . . . 115
plotGroupClusterDimRed . . . 117
plotMarkerHeatmap . . . 119
plotPairwiseDEGHeatmap . . . 121
plotProportion . . . 123
plotProportionBox . . . 125
plotSankey . . . 127

plotSpatial2D . . . 129
plotVarFeatures . . . 131
plotVolcano . . . 132
print.factorGSEA . . . 134
quantile_norm-deprecated . . . 134
quantileAlignSNF . . . 135
quantileNorm . . . 137
rawPeak . . . 140
read10X . . . 141
read10XFiles . . . 144
read10XH5 . . . 145
readH5AD . . . 146
readLiger . . . 147
readSubset . . . 149
removeMissing . . . 150
restoreH5Liger . . . 151
retrieveCellFeature . . . 152
reverseMethData . . . 153
runCINMF . . . 154
runCluster . . . 156
runGeneralQC . . . 158
runGOEnrich . . . 160
runGSEA . . . 162
runINMF . . . 163
runIntegration . . . 166
runOnlineINMF . . . 168
runPairwiseDEG . . . 171
runTSNE . . . 176
runUINMF . . . 177
runUMAP . . . 179
scaleNotCenter . . . 181
selectBatchHVG . . . 184
selectGenes . . . 187
selectGenesVST . . . 189
sub-liger . . . 190
sub-ligerDataset . . . 191
sub-sub-liger . . . 192
subsetLiger . . . 192
subsetLigerDataset . . . 194
suggestK . . . 195
summary.factorGSEA . . . 197
updateLigerObject . . . 197
writeH5 . . . 198
writeH5AD . . . 200

Index **203**

`.complexHeatmapDotPlot` *Generate dot plot from input matrix with ComplexHeatmap*

Description

Generate dot plot from input matrix with ComplexHeatmap

Usage

```
.complexHeatmapDotPlot(
  colorMat,
  sizeMat,
  featureAnnDF = NULL,
  cellSplitVar = NULL,
  cellLabels = NULL,
  maxDotSize = 4,
  clusterFeature = FALSE,
  clusterCell = FALSE,
  legendColorTitle = "Matrix Value",
  legendSizeTitle = "Fraction Value",
  transpose = FALSE,
  baseSize = 8,
  cellTextSize = NULL,
  featureTextSize = NULL,
  cellTitleSize = NULL,
  featureTitleSize = NULL,
  legendTextSize = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  featureGrpRot = 0,
  viridisOption = "C",
  viridisDirection = -1,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`colorMat`, `sizeMat`	Matrix of the same size. Values in `colorMat` will be visualized with color while values in `sizeMat` will be reflected by dot size.
`featureAnnDF`	Data frame of features containing feature names and grouping labels.
`cellSplitVar`	Split the cell orientation (default columns) by this variable.
`cellLabels`	Label to be shown on cell orientation.
`maxDotSize`	The maximum dot size. Default `4`.

clusterFeature, clusterCell
: Whether the feature/cell orientation (default rows/column, respectively) should be clustered. Default FALSE.

legendColorTitle, legendSizeTitle
: The title for color bar and dot size legends, repectively. Default see "Matrix Value" and "Fraction Value".

transpose
: Logical, whether to rotate the dot plot orientation. i.e. rows as cell aggregation and columns as features. Default FALSE.

baseSize
: One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this. Default 8.

cellTextSize, featureTextSize, legendTextSize
: Size of cell labels, feature label and legend text. Default NULL controls by baseSize.

cellTitleSize, featureTitleSize, legendTitleSize
: Size of titles on cell and feature orientation and legend title. Default NULL controls by baseSize + 2.

featureGrpRot
: Number of degree to rotate the feature grouping label. Default 0.

viridisOption, viridisDirection
: See argument option and direction of viridis. Default "A" and -1.

...
: Additional arguments passed to Heatmap.

Value

A HeatmapList object.

.ggCellViolin *Produce single violin plot with data frame passed from upstream*

Description

Produce single violin plot with data frame passed from upstream

Usage

```
.ggCellViolin(
  plotDF,
  y,
  groupBy = NULL,
  colorBy = NULL,
  violin = TRUE,
  violinAlpha = 0.8,
  violinWidth = 0.9,
  box = FALSE,
  boxAlpha = 0.6,
  boxWidth = 0.4,
```

```
  dot = FALSE,
  dotColor = "black",
  dotSize = getOption("ligerDotSize"),
  xlabAngle = 45,
  raster = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

plotDF	Data frame like object (fortifiable) that contains all necessary information to make the plot.
y, groupBy, colorBy	See plotCellViolin.
violin, box, dot	Logical, whether to add violin plot, box plot or dot (scatter) plot, respectively. Layers are added in the order of dot, violin, and violin on the top surface. By default, only violin plot is generated.
violinAlpha, boxAlpha	Numeric, controls the transparency of layers. Default 0.8, 0.6, respectively.
violinWidth, boxWidth	Numeric, controls the width of violin/box bounding box. Default 0.9 and 0.4.
dotColor, dotSize	Numeric, globally controls the appearance of all dots. Default "black" and getOption("ligerDotSize") (1).
xlabAngle	Numeric, counter-clockwise rotation angle of X axis label text. Default 45.
raster	Logical, whether to rasterize the dot plot. Default NULL automatically rasterizes the dot plot when number of total cells to be plotted exceeds 100,000.
seed	Random seed for reproducibility. Default 1.
...	More theme setting arguments passed to .ggplotLigerTheme.

Value

ggplot object by default. When plotly = TRUE, returns plotly (htmlwidget) object.

.ggplotLigerTheme *Generic ggplot theme setting for rliger package*

Description

Controls content and size of all peripheral texts.

Usage

```
.ggplotLigerTheme(
  plot,
  title = NULL,
  subtitle = NULL,
  xlab = TRUE,
  ylab = TRUE,
  xlabAngle = 0,
  legendColorTitle = NULL,
  legendFillTitle = NULL,
  legendShapeTitle = NULL,
  legendSizeTitle = NULL,
  showLegend = TRUE,
  legendPosition = "right",
  baseSize = getOption("ligerBaseSize"),
  titleSize = NULL,
  subtitleSize = NULL,
  xTextSize = NULL,
  xFacetSize = NULL,
  xTitleSize = NULL,
  yTextSize = NULL,
  yFacetSize = NULL,
  yTitleSize = NULL,
  legendTextSize = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  legendDotSize = 4,
  panelBorder = FALSE,
  legendNRow = NULL,
  legendNCol = NULL,
  colorLabels = NULL,
  colorValues = NULL,
  colorPalette = "magma",
  colorDirection = -1,
  naColor = "#DEDEDE",
  colorLow = NULL,
  colorMid = NULL,
  colorHigh = NULL,
  colorMidPoint = NULL,
  plotly = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

plot	ggplot object passed from wrapper plotting functions
title, subtitle, xlab, ylab	Main title, subtitle or X/Y axis title text. By default, no main title or subtitle will be set, and X/Y axis title will be the names of variables used for plotting. Use NULL to hide elements. TRUE for xlab or ylab shows default values.

`xlabAngle` Numeric, counter-clockwise rotation angle of X axis label text. Default `0` shows horizontal text.

`legendColorTitle`
Legend title text for color aesthetics, often used for categorical or continuous coloring of dots. Default `NULL` shows the original variable name.

`legendFillTitle`
Legend title text for fill aesthetics, often used for violin, box, bar plots. Default `NULL` shows the original variable name.

`legendShapeTitle`
Legend title text for shape aesthetics, often used for shaping dots by categorical variable. Default `NULL` shows the original variable name.

`legendSizeTitle`
Legend title text for size aesthetics, often used for sizing dots by continuous variable. Default `NULL` shows the original variable name.

`showLegend` Whether to show the legend. Default `TRUE`.

`legendPosition` Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from `"top"`, `"bottom"`, `"left"` or `"right"`. Default `"right"`.

`baseSize` One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

`titleSize`, `xTitleSize`, `yTitleSize`, `legendTitleSize`
Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default `NULL` controls by `baseSize + 2`.

`subtitleSize`, `xTextSize`, `yTextSize`, `legendTextSize`
Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default `NULL` controls by `baseSize`.

`xFacetSize` Size of facet strip label text on x-axis. Default `NULL` controls by `baseSize - 2`.

`yFacetSize` Size of facet strip label text on y-axis. Default `NULL` controls by `baseSize - 2`.

`legendDotSize` Allow dots in legend region to be large enough to see the colors/shapes clearly. Default `4`.

`panelBorder` Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default `FALSE`.

`legendNRow`, `legendNCol`
Integer, when too many categories in one variable, arranges number of rows or columns. Default `NULL`, automatically split to `ceiling(levels(variable)/15)` columns.

`colorLabels` Character vector for modifying category names in a color legend. Passed to `ggplot2::scale_color_manual(labels)`. Default `NULL` uses original levels of the factor.

`colorValues` Character vector of colors for modifying category colors in a color legend. Passed to `ggplot2::scale_color_manual(values)`. Default `NULL` uses internal selected palette when <= 26 categories are presented, otherwise ggplot hues.

`colorPalette` For continuous coloring, an index or a palette name to select from available options from ggplot `scale_brewer` or `viridis`. Default `"magma"`.

colorDirection Choose 1 or -1. Applied when colorPalette is from Viridis options. Default -1 use darker color for higher value, while 1 reverses this direction.

naColor The color code for NA values. Default "#DEDEDE". scale_colour_gradient2. Default NULL.

colorLow, colorMid, colorHigh, colorMidPoint
All four of these must be specified to customize palette with

plotly Whether to use plotly to enable web based interactive browsing for the plot. Requires installation of package "plotly". Default FALSE.

Value

Updated ggplot object by default. When plotly = TRUE, returns plotly (htmlwidget) object.

.ggScatter *Produce single scatter plot with data frame passed from upstream*

Description

Produce single scatter plot with data frame passed from upstream

Usage

```
.ggScatter(
  plotDF,
  x,
  y,
  colorBy = NULL,
  shapeBy = NULL,
  dotOrder = c("shuffle", "ascending", "descending"),
  dotSize = getOption("ligerDotSize"),
  dotAlpha = 0.9,
  trimHigh = NULL,
  trimLow = NULL,
  zeroAsNA = TRUE,
  raster = NULL,
  labelBy = colorBy,
  labelText = TRUE,
  labelTextSize = 4,
  ggrepelLabelTick = FALSE,
  seed = 1,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

plotDF	Data frame like object (fortifiable) that contains all necessary information to make the plot.
x, y	Available variable name in cellMeta slot to look for the dot coordinates. See details.
colorBy, shapeBy	See plotDimRed.
dotOrder	Controls the order that each dot is added to the plot. Choose from "shuffle", "ascending", or "descending". Default "shuffle", useful when coloring by categories that overlaps (e.g. "dataset"), "ascending" can be useful when coloring by a continuous variable (e.g. gene expression) where high values needs more highlight. NULL use default order.
dotSize, dotAlpha	Numeric, controls the size or transparency of all dots. Default getOption("ligerDotSize") (1) and 0.9.
trimHigh, trimLow	Numeric, limit the largest or smallest value of continuous colorBy variable. Default NULL.
zeroAsNA	Logical, whether to set zero values in continuous colorBy variable to NA so the color of these value.
raster	Logical, whether to rasterize the plot. Default NULL automatically rasterize the plot when number of total dots to be plotted exceeds 100,000.
labelBy	A variable name available in plotDF. If the variable is categorical (a factor), the label position will be the median coordinates of all dots within the same group. Unique labeling in character vector for each dot is also acceptable. Default colorBy.
labelText	Logical, whether to show text label at the median position of each categorical group specified by colorBy. Default TRUE. Does not work when continuous coloring is specified.
labelTextSize	Numeric, controls the size of label size when labelText = TRUE. Default 4.
ggrepelLabelTick	Logical, whether to force showing the tick between label texts and the position they point to. Useful when a lot of text labels are required. Default FALSE. Run options(ggrepel.max.overlaps = n) before plotting to set allowed label overlaps.
seed	Random seed for reproducibility. Default 1.
...	More theme setting arguments passed to .ggplotLigerTheme.

Details

Having package "ggrepel" installed can help adding tidier text labels on the scatter plot.

Value

ggplot object by default. When plotly = TRUE, returns plotly (htmlwidget) object.

.plotHeatmap *General heatmap plotting with prepared matrix and data.frames*

Description

This is not an exported function. This documentation just serves for a manual of extra arguments that users can use when generating heatmaps with plotGeneHeatmap or plotFactorHeatmap.

Note that the following arguments are pre-occupied by upstream wrappers so users should not include them in a function call: dataMatrix, dataName, cellDF, featureDF, cellSplitVar, featureSplitVar.

The following arguments of Heatmap is occupied by this function, so users should include them in a function call as well: matrix, name, col, heatmap_legend_param, top_annotation, column_title_gp, column_names_gp, show_column_names, column_split, column_gap, left_annotation, row_title_gp, row_names_gp, show_row_names, row_split, row_gap.

Usage

```
.plotHeatmap(
  dataMatrix,
  dataName = "Value",
  cellDF = NULL,
  featureDF = NULL,
  transpose = FALSE,
  cellSplitVar = NULL,
  featureSplitVar = NULL,
  dataScaleFunc = NULL,
  showCellLabel = FALSE,
  showCellLegend = TRUE,
  showFeatureLabel = TRUE,
  showFeatureLegend = TRUE,
  cellAnnColList = NULL,
  featureAnnColList = NULL,
  scale = FALSE,
  trim = c(-2, 2),
  baseSize = 8,
  cellTextSize = NULL,
  featureTextSize = NULL,
  cellTitleSize = NULL,
  featureTitleSize = NULL,
  legendTextSize = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  viridisOption = "A",
  viridisDirection = -1,
  RColorBrewerOption = "RdBu",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

dataMatrix	Matrix object with features/factors as rows and cells as columns.
dataName	Text for heatmap color bar title. Default Value.
cellDF	data.frame object. Number of rows must match with number of columns of dataMatrix.
featureDF	data.frame object. Number of columns must match with number of rows of dataMatrix.
transpose	Logical, whether to "rotate" the heatmap by 90 degrees so that cell information is displayed by row. Default FALSE.
cellSplitVar, featureSplitVar	Subset columns of cellDF or featureDF, respectively.
dataScaleFunc	A function object, applied to dataMatrix.
showCellLabel, showFeatureLabel	Logical, whether to show cell barcodes, gene symbols or factor names. Default TRUE for gene/factors but FALSE for cells.
showCellLegend, showFeatureLegend	Logical, whether to show cell or feature legends. Default TRUE. Can be a scalar for overall control or a vector matching with each given annotation variable.
cellAnnColList, featureAnnColList	List object, with each element a named vector of R-interpretable color code. The names of the list elements are used for matching the annotation variable names. The names of the colors in the vectors are used for matching the levels of a variable (factor object, categorical). Default NULL generates ggplot-flavor categorical colors.
scale	Logical, whether to take z-score to scale and center gene expression. Applied after dataScaleFunc. Default FALSE.
trim	Numeric vector of two values. Limit the z-score value into this range when scale = TRUE. Default c(-2, 2).
baseSize	One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.
cellTextSize, featureTextSize, legendTextSize	Size of cell barcode labels, gene/factor labels, or legend values. Default NULL.
cellTitleSize, featureTitleSize, legendTitleSize	Size of titles of the cell slices, gene/factor slices, or the legends. Default NULL.
viridisOption, viridisDirection	See argument option and direction of viridis. Default "A" and -1.
RColorBrewerOption	When scale = TRUE, heatmap color will be mapped with brewer.pal. This is passed to name. Default "RdBu".
...	Additional arguments to be passed to Heatmap.

Value

HeatmapList-class object

`alignFactors` *Align factor loadings to get final integration*

Description

This function is a wrapper to switch between alternative factor loading alignment methods that LIGER provides, which is a required step for producing the final integrated result. Two methods are provided (click on options for more details):

- `method = "quantileNorm"`: Previously published quantile normalization method. (default)
- `method = "centroidAlign"`: Newly developed centroid alignment method. **[Experimental]**

Usage

```
alignFactors(object, method = c("quantileNorm", "centroidAlign"), ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
alignFactors(object, method = c("quantileNorm", "centroidAlign"), ...)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
alignFactors(object, method = c("quantileNorm", "centroidAlign"), ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger or Seurat object with valid factorization result available (i.e. `runIntegration` performed in advance).
`method`	Character, method to align factors. Default `"centroidAlign"`. Optionally `"quantileNorm"`.
`...`	Additional arguments passed to selected methods. For `"quantileNorm"`: `quantiles` Number of quantiles to use for quantile normalization. Default `50`. `reference` Character, numeric or logical selection of one dataset, out of all available datasets in `object`, to use as a "reference" for quantile normalization. Default `NULL` tries to find an RNA dataset with the largest number of cells; if no RNA dataset available, use the globally largest dataset. `minCells` Minimum number of cells to consider a cluster shared across datasets. Default `20`. `nNeighbors` Number of nearest neighbors for within-dataset knn graph. Default `20`. `useDims` Indices of factors to use for shared nearest factor determination. Default `NULL` uses all factors. `center` Whether to center the data when scaling factors. Could be useful for less sparse modalities like methylation data. Default `FALSE`. `maxSample` Maximum number of cells used for quantile normalization of each cluster and factor. Default `1000`.

eps The error bound of the nearest neighbor search. Lower values give more accurate nearest neighbor graphs but take much longer to compute. Default 0.9.

refineKNN Whether to increase robustness of cluster assignments using KNN graph. Default TRUE.

clusterName Variable name that will store the clustering result in metadata of a liger object or a Seurat object. Default "quantileNorm_cluster".

seed Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default 1.

verbose Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.

For "centroidAlign" **[Experimental]**:

lambda Ridge regression penalty applied to each dataset. Can be one number that applies to all datasets, or a numeric vector with length equal to the number of datasets. Default 1.

useDims Indices of factors to use considered for the alignment. Default NULL uses all factors.

scaleEmb Logical, whether to scale the factor loading being considered as the embedding. Default TRUE.

centerEmb Logical, whether to center the factor loading being considered as the embedding before scaling it. Default TRUE.

scaleCluster Logical, whether to scale the factor loading being considered as the cluster assignment probability. Default FALSE.

centerCluster Logical, whether to center the factor loading being considered as the cluster assignment probability before scaling it. Default FALSE.

shift Logical, whether to shift the factor loading being considered as the cluster assignment probability after centered scaling. Default FALSE.

diagnosis Logical, whether to return cell metadata variables with diagnostic information. Default FALSE.

See Also

quantileNorm, centroidAlign

---

as.liger.dgCMatrix *Converting other classes of data to a liger object*

Description

This function converts data stored in SingleCellExperiment (SCE), Seurat object or a merged sparse matrix (dgCMatrix) into a liger object. This is designed for a container object or matrix that already contains multiple datasets to be integerated with LIGER. For individual datasets, please use createLiger instead.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'dgCMatrix'
as.liger(object, datasetVar = NULL, modal = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class 'SingleCellExperiment'
as.liger(object, datasetVar = NULL, modal = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
as.liger(object, datasetVar = NULL, modal = NULL, assay = NULL, ...)

seuratToLiger(object, datasetVar = NULL, modal = NULL, assay = NULL, ...)

as.liger(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	Object.
datasetVar	Specify the dataset belonging by: 1. Select a variable from existing metadata in the object (e.g. colData column); 2. Specify a vector/factor that assign the dataset belonging. 3. Give a single character string which means that all data is from one dataset (must not be a metadata variable, otherwise it is understood as 1.). Default NULL gathers things into one dataset and names it "sample" for dgCMatrix, attempts to find variable "sample" from SCE or "orig.ident" from Seurat.
modal	Modality setting for each dataset. See createLiger.
...	Additional arguments passed to createLiger
assay	Name of assay to use. Default NULL uses current active assay.

Details

For Seurat V5 structure, it is highly recommended that users make use of its split layer feature, where things like "counts", "data", and "scale.data" can be held for each dataset in the same Seurat object, e.g. with "count.ctrl", "count.stim", not merged. If a Seurat object with split layers is given, datasetVar will be ignored and the layers will be directly used.

Value

a liger object.

Examples

```
# dgCMatrix (common sparse matrix class), usually obtained from other
# container object, and contains multiple samples merged in one.
matList <- rawData(pbmc)
multiSampleMatrix <- mergeSparseAll(matList)
# The `datasetVar` argument expects the variable assigning the sample source
pbmc2 <- as.liger(multiSampleMatrix, datasetVar = pbmc$dataset)
pbmc2
```

```
if (requireNamespace("SingleCellExperiment", quietly = TRUE)) {
    sce <- SingleCellExperiment::SingleCellExperiment(
        assays = list(counts = multiSampleMatrix)
    )
    sce$sample <- pbmc$dataset
    pbmc3 <- as.liger(sce, datasetVar = "sample")
    pbmc3
}

if (requireNamespace("Seurat", quietly = TRUE)) {
    seu <- SeuratObject::CreateSeuratObject(multiSampleMatrix)
    # Seurat creates variable "orig.ident" by identifying the cell barcode
    # prefixes, which is indeed what we need in this case. Users might need
    # to be careful and have it confirmed first.
    pbmc4 <- as.liger(seu, datasetVar = "orig.ident")
    pbmc4

    # As per Seurat V5 updates with layered data, specifically helpful udner the
    # scenario of dataset integration. "counts" and etc for each datasets can be
    # split into layers.
    seu5 <- seu
    seu5[["RNA"]] <- split(seu5[["RNA"]], pbmc$dataset)
    print(SeuratObject::Layers(seu5))
    pbmc5 <- as.liger(seu5)
    pbmc5
}
```

`as.ligerDataset.ligerDataset` *Converting other classes of data to a ligerDataset object*

Description

Works for converting a matrix or container object to a single ligerDataset, and can also convert the modality preset of a ligerDataset. When used with a dense matrix object, it automatically converts the matrix to sparse form (`dgCMatrix-class`). When used with container objects such as Seurat or SingleCellExperiment, it is highly recommended that the object contains only one dataset/sample which is going to be integrated with LIGER. For multi-sample objects, please use `as.liger` with dataset source variable specified.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'ligerDataset'
as.ligerDataset(
  object,
  modal = c("default", "rna", "atac", "spatial", "meth"),
```

```
  ...
)

## Default S3 method:
as.ligerDataset(
  object,
  modal = c("default", "rna", "atac", "spatial", "meth"),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'matrix'
as.ligerDataset(
  object,
  modal = c("default", "rna", "atac", "spatial", "meth"),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
as.ligerDataset(
  object,
  modal = c("default", "rna", "atac", "spatial", "meth"),
  assay = NULL,
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'SingleCellExperiment'
as.ligerDataset(
  object,
  modal = c("default", "rna", "atac", "spatial", "meth"),
  ...
)

as.ligerDataset(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	Object.
modal	Modality setting for each dataset. Choose from "default", "rna", "atac", "spatial", "meth".
...	Additional arguments passed to createLigerDataset
assay	Name of assay to use. Default NULL uses current active assay.

Value

a liger object.

Examples

```
ctrl <- dataset(pbmc, "ctrl")
```

```
ctrl
# Convert the modality preset
as.ligerDataset(ctrl, modal = "atac")
rawCounts <- rawData(ctrl)
class(rawCounts)
as.ligerDataset(rawCounts)
```

---

bmmc *liger object of bone marrow subsample data with RNA and ATAC modality*

Description

liger object of bone marrow subsample data with RNA and ATAC modality

Usage

```
bmmc
```

Format

liger object with two dataset named by "rna" and "atac"

Source

https://www.nature.com/articles/s41587-019-0332-7

References

Jeffrey M. Granja and et. al., Nature Biotechnology, 2019

---

calcAgreement *Calculate agreement metric after integration*

Description

This metric quantifies how much the factorization and alignment distorts the geometry of the original datasets. The greater the agreement, the less distortion of geometry there is. This is calculated by performing dimensionality reduction on the original and integrated (factorized or plus aligned) datasets, and measuring similarity between the k nearest neighbors for each cell in original and integrated datasets. The Jaccard index is used to quantify similarity, and is the final metric averages across all cells.

Note that for most datasets, the greater the chosen `nNeighbor`, the greater the agreement in general. Although agreement can theoretically approach 1, in practice it is usually no higher than 0.2-0.3.

Usage

```
calcAgreement(
  object,
  ndims = 40,
  nNeighbors = 15,
  useRaw = FALSE,
  byDataset = FALSE,
  seed = 1,
  dr.method = NULL,
  k = nNeighbors,
  use.aligned = NULL,
  rand.seed = seed,
  by.dataset = byDataset
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object. Should call alignFactors before calling.
ndims	Number of factors to produce in NMF. Default 40.
nNeighbors	Number of nearest neighbors to use in calculating Jaccard index. Default 15.
useRaw	Whether to evaluate just factorized H matrices instead of using aligned $H.norm$ matrix. Default FALSE uses aligned matrix.
byDataset	Whether to return agreement calculated for each dataset instead of the average for all datasets. Default FALSE.
seed	Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default 1.
dr.method	**[Defunct]** We no longer support other methods but just NMF.
k, rand.seed, by.dataset	**[Superseded]** See Usage for replacement.
use.aligned	**[Superseded]** Use useRaw instead.

Value

A numeric vector of agreement metric. A single value if byDataset = FALSE or each dataset a value otherwise.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    pbmc <- pbmc %>%
    normalize %>%
    selectGenes %>%
    scaleNotCenter %>%
    runINMF %>%
    alignFactors
    calcAgreement(pbmc)
}
```

`calcAlignment` *Calculate alignment metric after integration*

Description

This metric quantifies how well-aligned two or more datasets are. We randomly downsample all datasets to have as many cells as the smallest one. We construct a nearest-neighbor graph and calculate for each cell how many of its neighbors are from the same dataset. We average across all cells and compare to the expected value for perfectly mixed datasets, and scale the value from 0 to 1. Note that in practice, alignment can be greater than 1 occasionally.

Usage

```
calcAlignment(
  object,
  clustersUse = NULL,
  clusterVar = NULL,
  nNeighbors = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  cellComp = NULL,
  resultBy = c("all", "dataset", "cell"),
  seed = 1,
  k = nNeighbors,
  rand.seed = seed,
  cells.use = cellIdx,
  cells.comp = cellComp,
  clusters.use = clustersUse,
  by.cell = NULL,
  by.dataset = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object, with `alignFactors` already run.
`clustersUse`	The clusters to consider for calculating the alignment. Should be a vector of existing levels in `clusterVar`. Default `NULL`. See Details.
`clusterVar`	The name of one variable in `cellMeta(object)`. Default `NULL` uses default clusters.
`nNeighbors`	Number of neighbors to use in calculating alignment. Default `NULL` uses `floor(0.01*ncol(object))`, with a lower bound of 10 in all cases except where the total number of sampled cells is less than 10.
`cellIdx, cellComp`	Character, logical or numeric index that can subscribe cells. Default `NULL`. See Details.
`resultBy`	Select from `"all"`, `"dataset"` or `"cell"`. On which level should the mean alignment be calculated. Default `"all"`.

seed Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default 1.

k, rand.seed, cells.use, cells.comp, clusters.use
[Superseded] Please see Usage for replacement.

by.cell, by.dataset
[Superseded] Use resultBy instead.

Details

$\bar{x}$ is the average number of neighbors belonging to any cells' same dataset, N is the number of datasets, k is the number of neighbors in the KNN graph.

$$1 - \frac{\bar{x} - \frac{k}{N}}{k - \frac{k}{N}}$$

The selection on cells to be measured can be done in various way and represent different scenarios:

1. By default, all cells are considered and the alignment across all datasets will be calculated.
2. Select clustersUse from clusterVar to use cells from the clusters of interests. This measures the alignment across all covered datasets within the specified clusters.
3. Only Specify cellIdx for flexible selection. This measures the alignment across all covered datasets within the specified cells. A none-NULL cellIdx privileges over clustersUse.
4. Specify cellIdx and cellComp at the same time, so that the original dataset source will be ignored and cells specified by each argument will be regarded as from each a dataset. This measures the alignment between cells specified by the two arguments. cellComp can contain cells already specified in cellIdx.

Value

The alignment metric.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    pbmc <- pbmc %>%
    normalize %>%
    selectGenes %>%
    scaleNotCenter %>%
    runINMF %>%
    alignFactors
    calcAlignment(pbmc)
}
```

`calcARI` *Calculate adjusted Rand index (ARI) by comparing two cluster labeling variables*

Description

This function aims at calculating the adjusted Rand index for the clustering result obtained with LIGER and the external clustering (existing "true" annotation). ARI ranges from 0 to 1, with a score of 0 indicating no agreement between clusterings and 1 indicating perfect agreement.

The true clustering annotation must be specified as the base line. We suggest setting it to the object cellMeta so that it can be easily used for many other visualization and evaluation functions.

The ARI can be calculated for only specified datasets, since true annotation might not be available for all datasets. Evaluation for only one or a few datasets can be done by specifying `useDatasets`. If `useDatasets` is specified, the argument checking for `trueCluster` and `useCluster` will be enforced to match the cells in the specified datasets.

Usage

```
calcARI(
  object,
  trueCluster,
  useCluster = NULL,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  classes.compare = trueCluster
)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object, with the clustering result present in cellMeta.
`trueCluster`	Either the name of one variable in `cellMeta(object)` or a factor object with annotation that matches with all cells being considered.
`useCluster`	The name of one variable in `cellMeta(object)`. Default `NULL` uses default clusters.
`useDatasets`	A character vector of the names, a numeric or logical vector of the index of the datasets to be considered for the purity calculation. Default `NULL` uses all datasets.
`verbose`	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default `getOption("ligerVerbose")` or `TRUE` if users have not set.
`classes.compare`	. **[Superseded]** Use `trueCluster` instead.

Value

A numeric scalar, the ARI of the clustering result indicated by `useCluster` compared to `trueCluster`.

A numeric scalar of the ARI value

References

L. Hubert and P. Arabie (1985) Comparing Partitions, Journal of the Classification, 2, pp. 193-218.

Examples

```
# Assume the true cluster in `pbmcPlot` is "leiden_cluster"
# generate fake new labeling
fake <- sample(1:7, ncol(pbmcPlot), replace = TRUE)
# Insert into cellMeta
pbmcPlot$new <- factor(fake)
calcARI(pbmcPlot, trueCluster = "leiden_cluster", useCluster = "new")

# Now assume we got existing base line annotation only for "stim" dataset
nStim <- ncol(dataset(pbmcPlot, "stim"))
stimTrueLabel <- factor(fake[1:nStim])
# Insert into cellMeta
cellMeta(pbmcPlot, "stim_true_label", useDatasets = "stim") <- stimTrueLabel
# Assume "leiden_cluster" is the clustering result we got and need to be
# evaluated
calcARI(pbmcPlot, trueCluster = "stim_true_label",
        useCluster = "leiden_cluster", useDatasets = "stim")

# Comparison of the same labeling should always yield 1.
calcARI(pbmcPlot, trueCluster = "leiden_cluster", useCluster = "leiden_cluster")
```

---

calcDatasetSpecificity

Calculate a dataset-specificity score for each factor

Description

This score represents the relative magnitude of the dataset-specific components of each factor's gene loadings compared to the shared components for two datasets. First, for each dataset we calculate the norm of the sum of each factor's shared loadings (W) and dataset-specific loadings (V). We then determine the ratio of these two values and subtract from 1... TODO: finish description.

Usage

```
calcDatasetSpecificity(
  object,
  dataset1,
  dataset2,
  doPlot = FALSE,
  do.plot = doPlot
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object with factorization results.
dataset1	Name of first dataset. Required.
dataset2	Name of second dataset. Required.
doPlot	Logical. Whether to display a barplot of dataset specificity scores (by factor). Default FALSE.
do.plot	**Deprecated**. Use doPlot instead.

Value

List containing three elements.

pct1	Vector of the norm of each metagene factor for dataset1.
pct2	Vector of the norm of each metagene factor for dataset2.
pctSpec	Vector of dataset specificity scores.

---

calcNMI *Calculate Normalized Mutual Information (NMI) by comparing two cluster labeling variables*

Description

This function aims at calculating the Normalized Mutual Information for the clustering result obtained with LIGER and the external clustering (existing "true" annotation). NMI ranges from 0 to 1, with a score of 0 indicating no agreement between clusterings and 1 indicating perfect agreement. The mathematical definition of NMI is as follows:

$$H(X) = -\sum_{x \in X} P(X = x) \log_2 P(X = x)$$

$$H(X|Y) = -\sum_{y \in Y} P(Y = y) \sum_{x \in X} P(X = x|Y = y) \log_2 P(X = x|Y = y)$$

$$I(X;Y) = H(X) - H(X|Y)$$

$$NMI(X;Y) = \frac{I(X;Y)}{\sqrt{H(X)H(Y)}}$$

Where X is the cluster variable to be evaluated and Y is the true cluster variable. x and y are the cluster labels in X and Y respectively. H is the entropy and I is the mutual information.

The true clustering annotation must be specified as the base line. We suggest setting it to the object cellMeta so that it can be easily used for many other visualization and evaluation functions.

The NMI can be calculated for only specified datasets, since true annotation might not be available for all datasets. Evaluation for only one or a few datasets can be done by specifying useDatasets. If useDatasets is specified, the argument checking for trueCluster and useCluster will be enforced to match the cells in the specified datasets.

Usage

```
calcNMI(
  object,
  trueCluster,
  useCluster = NULL,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE)
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object, with the clustering result present in cellMeta.
trueCluster	Either the name of one variable in cellMeta(object) or a factor object with annotation that matches with all cells being considered.
useCluster	The name of one variable in cellMeta(object). Default NULL uses default clusters.
useDatasets	A character vector of the names, a numeric or logical vector of the index of the datasets to be considered for the purity calculation. Default NULL uses all datasets.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.

Value

A numeric scalar of the NMI value

Examples

```
# Assume the true cluster in `pbmcPlot` is "leiden_cluster"
# generate fake new labeling
fake <- sample(1:7, ncol(pbmcPlot), replace = TRUE)
# Insert into cellMeta
pbmcPlot$new <- factor(fake)
calcNMI(pbmcPlot, trueCluster = "leiden_cluster", useCluster = "new")

# Now assume we got existing base line annotation only for "stim" dataset
nStim <- ncol(dataset(pbmcPlot, "stim"))
stimTrueLabel <- factor(fake[1:nStim])
# Insert into cellMeta
cellMeta(pbmcPlot, "stim_true_label", useDatasets = "stim") <- stimTrueLabel
# Assume "leiden_cluster" is the clustering result we got and need to be
# evaluated
calcNMI(pbmcPlot, trueCluster = "stim_true_label",
        useCluster = "leiden_cluster", useDatasets = "stim")

# Comparison of the same labeling should always yield 1.
calcNMI(pbmcPlot, trueCluster = "leiden_cluster", useCluster = "leiden_cluster")
```

`calcPurity` *Calculate purity by comparing two cluster labeling variables*

Description

This function aims at calculating the purity for the clustering result obtained with LIGER and the external clustering (existing "true" annotation). Purity can sometimes be a more useful metric when the clustering to be tested contains more subgroups or clusters than the true clusters. Purity ranges from 0 to 1, with a score of 1 representing a pure, accurate clustering.

The true clustering annotation must be specified as the base line. We suggest setting it to the object cellMeta so that it can be easily used for many other visualization and evaluation functions.

The purity can be calculated for only specified datasets, since true annotation might not be available for all datasets. Evaluation for only one or a few datasets can be done by specifying `useDatasets`. If `useDatasets` is specified, the argument checking for `trueCluster` and `useCluster` will be enforced to match the cells in the specified datasets.

Usage

```
calcPurity(
  object,
  trueCluster,
  useCluster = NULL,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  classes.compare = trueCluster
)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object, with the clustering result present in cellMeta.
`trueCluster`	Either the name of one variable in `cellMeta(object)` or a factor object with annotation that matches with all cells being considered.
`useCluster`	The name of one variable in `cellMeta(object)`. Default `NULL` uses default clusters.
`useDatasets`	A character vector of the names, a numeric or logical vector of the index of the datasets to be considered for the purity calculation. Default `NULL` uses all datasets.
`verbose`	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default `getOption("ligerVerbose")` or `TRUE` if users have not set.
`classes.compare`	**[Superseded]** Use `trueCluster` instead.

Value

A numeric scalar, the purity of the clustering result indicated by `useCluster` compared to `trueCluster`.

Examples

```
# Assume the true cluster in `pbmcPlot` is "leiden_cluster"
# generate fake new labeling
fake <- sample(1:7, ncol(pbmcPlot), replace = TRUE)
# Insert into cellMeta
pbmcPlot$new <- factor(fake)
calcPurity(pbmcPlot, trueCluster = "leiden_cluster", useCluster = "new")

# Now assume we got existing base line annotation only for "stim" dataset
nStim <- ncol(dataset(pbmcPlot, "stim"))
stimTrueLabel <- factor(fake[1:nStim])
# Insert into cellMeta
cellMeta(pbmcPlot, "stim_true_label", useDatasets = "stim") <- stimTrueLabel
# Assume "leiden_cluster" is the clustering result we got and need to be
# evaluated
calcPurity(pbmcPlot, trueCluster = "stim_true_label",
           useCluster = "leiden_cluster", useDatasets = "stim")
```

---

ccGeneHuman *Cell cycle gene set for human*

Description

Copied from Seurat::cc.genes

Usage

```
ccGeneHuman
```

Format

A list of two character vectors:

s.genes Genes associated with S-phase

g2m.genes Genes associated with G2M-phase

Source

https://www.science.org/doi/abs/10.1126/science.aad0501

centroidAlign **[Experimental]** *Align factor loading by centroid alignment (beta)*

Description

This process treats the factor loading of each dataset as the low dimensional embedding as well as the cluster assignment probability, i.e. the soft clustering result. Then the method aligns the embedding by linearly moving the centroids of the same cluster but within each dataset towards each other.

ATTENTION: This method is still under development while has shown encouraging results in benchmarking tests. The arguments and their default values reflect the best scored parameters in the tests and some of them may be subject to change in the future.

Usage

```
centroidAlign(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
centroidAlign(
  object,
  lambda = 1,
  useDims = NULL,
  scaleEmb = TRUE,
  centerEmb = TRUE,
  scaleCluster = FALSE,
  centerCluster = FALSE,
  shift = FALSE,
  diagnosis = FALSE,
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
centroidAlign(
  object,
  reduction = "inmf",
  lambda = 1,
  useDims = NULL,
  scaleEmb = TRUE,
  centerEmb = TRUE,
  scaleCluster = FALSE,
  centerCluster = FALSE,
  shift = FALSE,
  diagnosis = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger or Seurat object with valid factorization result available (i.e. runIntegration performed in advance).
...	Arguments passed to other S3 methods of this function.
lambda	Ridge regression penalty applied to each dataset. Can be one number that applies to all datasets, or a numeric vector with length equal to the number of datasets. Default 1.
useDims	Indices of factors to use considered for the alignment. Default NULL uses all factors.
scaleEmb	Logical, whether to scale the factor loading being considered as the embedding. Default TRUE.
centerEmb	Logical, whether to center the factor loading being considered as the embedding before scaling it. Default TRUE.
scaleCluster	Logical, whether to scale the factor loading being considered as the cluster assignment probability. Default FALSE.
centerCluster	Logical, whether to center the factor loading being considered as the cluster assignment probability before scaling it. Default FALSE.
shift	Logical, whether to shift the factor loading being considered as the cluster assignment probability after centered scaling. Default FALSE.
diagnosis	Logical, whether to return cell metadata variables with diagnostic information. See Details. Default FALSE.
reduction	Name of the reduction where LIGER integration result is stored. Default "inmf".

Details

Diagnostic information include:

- object$raw_which.max: The index of the factor with the maximum value in the raw factor loading.
- object$R_which.max: The index of the factor with the maximum value in the soft clustering probability matrix used for correction.
- object$Z_which.max: The index of the factor with the maximum value in the aligned factor loading.

Value

Returns the updated input object

- liger method
  - Update the H.norm slot for the aligned cell factor loading, ready for running graph based community detection clustering or dimensionality reduction for visualization.
  - Update the cellMata slot with diagnostic information if diagnosis = TRUE.
- Seurat method
  - Update the reductions slot with a new DimReduc object containing the aligned cell factor loading.
  - Update the metadata with diagnostic information if diagnosis = TRUE.

Examples

```
pbmc <- centroidAlign(pbmcPlot)
```

`closeAllH5` *Close all links (to HDF5 files) of a liger object*

Description

When need to interact with the data embedded in HDF5 files out of the currect R session, the HDF5 files has to be closed in order to be available to other processes.

Usage

```
closeAllH5(object)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
closeAllH5(object)

## S3 method for class 'ligerDataset'
closeAllH5(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	liger object.

Value

Nothing is returned.

`commandDiff` *Check difference of two liger command*

Description

Check difference of two liger command

Usage

```
commandDiff(object, cmd1, cmd2)
```

Arguments

`object`	liger object
`cmd1, cmd2`	Exact string of command labels. Available options could be viewed with running `commands(object)`.

Value

If any difference found, a character vector summarizing all differences

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc, log = TRUE, scaleFactor = 1e4)
cmds <- commands(pbmc)
commandDiff(pbmc, cmds[1], cmds[2])
```

---

convertOldLiger *Convert old liger object to latest version*

Description

Convert old liger object to latest version

Usage

```
convertOldLiger(
  object,
  dimredName,
  clusterName = "clusters",
  h5FilePath = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object from rliger version <1.99.0
dimredName	The name of variable in cellMeta slot to store the dimensionality reduction matrix, which originally located in tsne.coords slot. Default "tsne.coords".
clusterName	The name of variable in cellMeta slot to store the clustering assignment, which originally located in clusters slot. Default "clusters".
h5FilePath	Named list, to specify the path to the H5 file of each dataset if location has been changed. Default NULL looks at the file paths stored in object.

Examples

```
## Not run:
# Suppose you have a liger object of old version (<1.99.0)
newLig <- convertOldLiger(oldLig)

## End(Not run)
```

coordinate *Access ligerSpatialDataset coordinate data*

Description

Similar as how default ligerDataset data is accessed.

Usage

```
coordinate(x, dataset)

coordinate(x, dataset, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger,character'
coordinate(x, dataset)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,character'
coordinate(x, dataset, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'ligerSpatialDataset,missing'
coordinate(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerSpatialDataset,missing'
coordinate(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value
```

Arguments

x	ligerSpatialDataset object or a liger object.
dataset	Name or numeric index of an spatial dataset.
check	Logical, whether to perform object validity check on setting new value.
value	matrix.

Value

The retrieved coordinate matrix or the updated x object.

createH5LigerDataset *Create on-disk ligerDataset Object*

Description

For convenience, the default `formatType = "10x"` directly fits the structure of cellranger output. `formatType = "anndata"` works for current AnnData H5AD file specification (see Details). If a customized H5 file structure is presented, any of the `rawData`, `indicesName`, `indptrName`, `genesName`, `barcodesName` should be specified accordingly to override the `formatType` preset.

DO make a copy of the H5AD files because rliger functions write to the files and they will not be able to be read back to Python. This will be fixed in the future.

Usage

```
createH5LigerDataset(
  h5file,
  formatType = "10x",
  rawData = NULL,
  normData = NULL,
  scaleData = NULL,
  barcodesName = NULL,
  genesName = NULL,
  indicesName = NULL,
  indptrName = NULL,
  anndataX = "X",
  modal = c("default", "rna", "atac", "spatial", "meth"),
  featureMeta = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

h5file	Filename of an H5 file
formatType	Select preset of H5 file structure. Default "10X". Alternatively, we also support "anndata" for H5AD files.
rawData, indicesName, indptrName	The path in a H5 file for the raw sparse matrix data. These three types of data stands for the x, i, and p slots of a dgCMatrix-class object. Default NULL uses formatType preset.
normData	The path in a H5 file for the "x" vector of the normalized sparse matrix. Default NULL.
scaleData	The path in a H5 file for the Group that contains the sparse matrix constructing information for the scaled data. Default NULL.
genesName, barcodesName	The path in a H5 file for the gene names and cell barcodes. Default NULL uses formatType preset.
anndataX	The HDF5 path to the raw count data in an H5AD file. See Details. Default "X".
modal	Name of modality for this dataset. Currently options of "default", "rna", "atac", "spatial" and "meth" are supported. Default "default".
featureMeta	Data frame for feature metadata. Default NULL.
...	Additional slot data. See ligerDataset for detail. Given values will be directly placed at corresponding slots.

Details

For H5AD file written from an AnnData object, we allow using formatType = "anndata" for the function to infer the proper structure. However, while a typical AnnData-based analysis tends to in-place update the adata.X attribute and there is no standard/forced convention for where the raw count data, as needed from LIGER, is stored. Therefore, we expose argument anndataX for

specifying this information. The default value "X" looks for adata.X. If the raw data is stored in a layer, e.g. adata.layers['count'], then anndataX = "layers/count". If it is stored to adata.raw.X, then anndataX = "raw/X". If your AnnData object does not have the raw count retained, you will have to go back to the Python work flow to have it inserted at desired object space and re-write the H5AD file, or just go from upstream source files with which the AnnData was originally created.

Value

H5-based ligerDataset object

Examples

```
h5Path <- system.file("extdata/ctrl.h5", package = "rliger")
tempPath <- tempfile(fileext = ".h5")
file.copy(from = h5Path, to = tempPath)
ld <- createH5LigerDataset(tempPath)
```

---

createLiger *Create liger object*

Description

This function allows creating liger object from multiple datasets of various forms (See rawData).

DO make a copy of the H5AD files because rliger functions write to the files and they will not be able to be read back to Python. This will be fixed in the future.

Usage

```
createLiger(
  rawData,
  modal = NULL,
  organism = "human",
  cellMeta = NULL,
  removeMissing = TRUE,
  addPrefix = "auto",
  formatType = "10X",
  anndataX = "X",
  dataName = NULL,
  indicesName = NULL,
  indptrName = NULL,
  genesName = NULL,
  barcodesName = NULL,
  newH5 = TRUE,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...,
  raw.data = rawData,
```

```
  take.gene.union = NULL,
  remove.missing = removeMissing,
  format.type = formatType,
  data.name = dataName,
  indices.name = indicesName,
  indptr.name = indptrName,
  genes.name = genesName,
  barcodes.name = barcodesName
)
```

Arguments

rawData	Named list of datasets. Required. Elements allowed include a matrix, a Seurat object, a SingleCellExperiment object, an AnnData object, a ligerDataset object or a filename to an HDF5 file. See detail for HDF5 reading.
modal	Character vector for modality setting. Use one string for all datasets, or the same number of strings as the number of datasets. Currently options of "default", "rna", "atac", "spatial" and "meth" are supported.
organism	Character vector for setting organism for identifying mito, ribo and hemo genes for expression percentage calculation. Use one string for all datasets, or the same number of strings as the number of datasets. Currently options of "mouse", "human", "zebrafish", "rat", and "drosophila" are supported.
cellMeta	data.frame of metadata at single-cell level. Default NULL.
removeMissing	Logical. Whether to remove cells that do not have any counts from each dataset. Default TRUE.
addPrefix	Logical. Whether to add "datasetName_" as a prefix of cell identifiers (e.g. barcodes) to avoid duplicates in multiple libraries (common with 10X data). Default "auto" detects if matrix columns already has the exact prefix or not. Logical value forces the action.
formatType	Select preset of H5 file structure. Current available options are "10x" and "anndata". Can be either a single specification for all datasets or a character vector that match with each dataset.
anndataX	The HDF5 path to the raw count data in an H5AD file. See createH5LigerDataset Details. Default "X".
dataName, indicesName, indptrName	The path in a H5 file for the raw sparse matrix data. These three types of data stands for the x, i, and p slots of a dgCMatrix-class object. Default NULL uses formatType preset.
genesName, barcodesName	The path in a H5 file for the gene names and cell barcodes. Default NULL uses formatType preset.
newH5	When using HDF5 based data and subsets created after removing missing cells/features, whether to create new HDF5 files for the subset. Default TRUE. If FALSE, data will be subset into memory and can be dangerous for large scale analysis.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.

`...` Additional slot values that should be directly placed in object.

`raw.data`, `remove.missing`, `format.type`, `data.name`, `indices.name`, `indptr.name`, `genes.name`, `barcodes.name`

[Superseded] See Usage section for replacement.

`take.gene.union`

[Defunct] Will be ignored.

See Also

`createLigerDataset`, `createH5LigerDataset`

Examples

```
# Create from raw count matrices
ctrl.raw <- rawData(pbmc, "ctrl")
stim.raw <- rawData(pbmc, "stim")
pbmc1 <- createLiger(list(ctrl = ctrl.raw, stim = stim.raw))

# Create from H5 files
h5Path <- system.file("extdata/ctrl.h5", package = "rliger")
tempPath <- tempfile(fileext = ".h5")
file.copy(from = h5Path, to = tempPath)
lig <- createLiger(list(ctrl = tempPath))

# Create from other container object
if (requireNamespace("SeuratObject", quietly = TRUE)) {
    ctrl.seu <- SeuratObject::CreateSeuratObject(ctrl.raw)
    stim.seu <- SeuratObject::CreateSeuratObject(stim.raw)
    pbmc2 <- createLiger(list(ctrl = ctrl.seu, stim = stim.seu))
}
```

---

createLigerDataset *Create in-memory ligerDataset object*

Description

Create in-memory ligerDataset object

Usage

```
createLigerDataset(
  rawData = NULL,
  modal = c("default", "rna", "atac", "spatial", "meth"),
  normData = NULL,
  scaleData = NULL,
  featureMeta = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

rawData, normData, scaleData	A dgCMatrix-class object for the raw or normalized expression count or a dense matrix of scaled variable gene expression, respectively. Default NULL for all three but at lease one has to be specified.
modal	Name of modality for this dataset. Currently options of "default", "rna", "atac", "spatial" and "meth" are supported. Default "default".
featureMeta	Data frame of feature metadata. Default NULL.
...	Additional slot data. See ligerDataset for detail. Given values will be directly placed at corresponding slots.

See Also

ligerDataset, ligerATACDataset, ligerSpatialDataset, ligerMethDataset

Examples

```
ctrl.raw <- rawData(pbmc, "ctrl")
ctrl.ld <- createLigerDataset(ctrl.raw)
```

---

deg.marker *Data frame for example marker DEG test result*

Description

The data frame is the direct output of marker detection DEG test applied on example dataset which can be loaded with data("pbmc"). The DEG test was done with:

```
defaultCluster(pbmc) <- pbmcPlot$leiden_cluster
deg.marker <- runMarkerDEG(
    pbmc,
    minCellPerRep = 5
)
```

The result is for the marker detection test for 8 clusters in the dataset by comparing each cluster against all other clusters.

Usage

```
deg.marker
```

Format

data.frame object of 1992 rows with columns:

- feature: gene names, 249 unique genes repeated 8 times for the tests done for 8 clusters.
- group: cluster names, 8 unique cluster names, dividing the tests.
- logFC: log fold change of the gene expression between the cluster of interest against all other clusters.
- pval: p-value of the DEG test.
- padj: adjusted p-value of the DEG test.
- pct_in: percentage of cells in the cluster of interest expressing the gene.
- pct_out: percentage of cells in all other clusters expressing the gene.

See Also

runMarkerDEG()

---

deg.pw *Data frame for example pairwise DEG test result*

Description

The data frame is the direct output of pairwise DEG test applied on example dataset which can be loaded with `importPBMC()`. Cell type annotation was obtained from SeuratData package, "ifnb" dataset, since they are the same. Use the following command to reproduce the same result:

```
library(rliger)
library(Seurat)
library(SeuratData)

lig <- importPBMC()
ifnb <- LoadData("ifnb")
lig$cell_type <- ifnb$seurat_annotations
lig$condition_cell_type <- interaction(lig$dataset, lig$cell_type, drop = FALSE)
deg.pw <- runPairwiseDEG(
    object = lig,
    groupTest = 'stim.CD14 Mono',
    groupCtrl = 'ctrl.CD14 Mono',
    variable1 = 'condition_cell_type'
)
deg.pw <- deg.pw[order(deg.pw$padj)[1:1000],]
```

The result represents the statistics of DEG test between stim dataset against ctrl dataset, within the CD14 monocytes. The result is randomly sampled to 1000 entries for minimum demonstration.

[1:1000]: R:1:1000

Usage

```
deg.pw
```

Format

data.frame object of 1000 rows with columns:

- feature: gene names.
- group: class name within the variable being used for the test condition.
- logFC: log fold change of the gene expression between the condition of interest against the control condition.
- pval: p-value of the DEG test.
- padj: adjusted p-value of the DEG test.
- pct_in: percentage of cells in the condition of interest expressing the gene.
- pct_out: percentage of cells in the control condition expressing the gene.

See Also

`runPairwiseDEG()`

---

downsample *Downsample datasets*

Description

This function mainly aims at downsampling datasets to a size suitable for plotting or expensive in-memmory calculation.

Users can balance the sample size of categories of interests with `balance`. Multi-variable specification to `balance` is supported, so that at most `maxCells` cells will be sampled from each combination of categories from the variables. For example, when two datasets are presented and three clusters labeled across them, there would then be at most $2 \times 3 \times maxCells$ cells being selected. Note that `"dataset"` will automatically be added as one variable when balancing the downsampling. However, if users want to balance the downsampling solely basing on dataset origin, users have to explicitly set `balance = "dataset"`.

Usage

```
downsample(
  object,
  balance = NULL,
  maxCells = 1000,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  returnIndex = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object
balance	Character vector of categorical variable names in cellMeta slot, to subsample maxCells cells from each combination of all specified variables. Default NULL samples maxCells cells from the whole object.
maxCells	Max number of cells to sample from the grouping based on balance.
useDatasets	Index selection of datasets to include Default NULL for using all datasets.
seed	Random seed for reproducibility. Default 1.
returnIndex	Logical, whether to only return the numeric index that can subset the original object instead of a subset object. Default FALSE.
...	Arguments passed to subsetLiger, where cellIdx is occupied by internal implementation.

Value

By default, a subset of liger object. Alternatively when returnIndex = TRUE, a numeric vector to be used with the original object.

Examples

```
# Subsetting an object
pbmc <- downsample(pbmc)
# Creating a subsetting index
sampleIdx <- downsample(pbmcPlot, balance = "leiden_cluster",
                        maxCells = 10, returnIndex = TRUE)
plotClusterDimRed(pbmcPlot, cellIdx = sampleIdx)
```

---

exportInteractTrack *Export predicted gene-pair interaction*

Description

Export the predicted gene-pair interactions calculated by upstream function linkGenesAndPeaks into an Interact Track file which is compatible with UCSC Genome Browser.

Usage

```
exportInteractTrack(
  corrMat,
  pathToCoords,
  useGenes = NULL,
  outputPath = getwd()
)
```

Arguments

corrMat	A sparse matrix of correlation with peak names as rows and gene names as columns.
pathToCoords	Path to the gene coordinates file.
useGenes	Character vector of gene names to be exported. Default NULL uses all genes available in corrMat.
outputPath	Path of filename where the output file will be stored. If a folder, a file named "Interact_Track.bed" will be created. Default current working directory.

Value

No return value. A file located at outputPath will be created.

Examples

```
bmmc <- normalize(bmmc)
bmmc <- selectGenes(bmmc)
bmmc <- scaleNotCenter(bmmc)
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("GenomicRanges", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("IRanges", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("psych", quietly = TRUE)) {
    bmmc <- runINMF(bmmc)
    bmmc <- alignFactors(bmmc)
    bmmc <- normalizePeak(bmmc)
    bmmc <- imputeKNN(bmmc, reference = "atac", queries = "rna")
    corr <- linkGenesAndPeaks(
        bmmc, useDataset = "rna",
        pathToCoords = system.file("extdata/hg19_genes.bed", package = "rliger")
    )
    resultPath <- tempfile()
    exportInteractTrack(
        corrMat = corr,
        pathToCoords = system.file("extdata/hg19_genes.bed", package = "rliger"),
        outputPath = resultPath
    )
    head(read.table(resultPath, skip = 1))
}
```

---

factorGSEA *Test all factors for enrichment in a gene set*

Description

This function takes the factorized W matrix, with gene loading in factors, to get the ranked gene list for each factor. Then it runs simply implemented GSEA against given gene sets. So if genes in the given gene set are top loaded in a factor, this function will return high positive enrichment score (ES) as well as significant p-value.

For the returned result object, use `print()` or `summary()` to show concise results, and use `plot()` to visualize the GSEA statistics.

This function can be useful in various scenarios:

For example, when clusters with strong cell cycle activity are detected, users can apply this function with cell cycle gene sets to identify if any factor is enriched with such genes. Then in the downstream when aligning the iNMF factor loadings, users can simply opt to exclude these factors so the variation in cell cycle is regressed out. Objects `cc.gene.human` and `cc.gene.mouse` are deliverered in package for convenience.

In other cases, this function can also be used to understand the biological meaning of each cluster. Since the downstream clustering result is largely determined by the top loaded factor in each cell, understanding what genes are loaded in the top factor helps understand the identity and activity of the cell. This will require users to have there own gene sets prepared.

Usage

```
factorGSEA(
  object,
  geneSet,
  nPerm = 1000,
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE)
)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object with factorized W matrix available.
`geneSet`	A character vector for a single gene set, or a list of character vectors for multiple gene sets.
`nPerm`	Integer number for number of permutations to estimate p-value. Default `1000`.
`seed`	Integer number for random seed. Default `1`. Set to `NULL` to not set seed.
`verbose`	Logical, whether to print progress bar. Default `getOptions('ligerVerbose')` otherwise `TRUE`.

Value

If `geneSet` is a single character vector, returns a data frame with enrichment score (ES), normalized enrichment score (NES), and p-value for the test in each factor. If `geneSet` is a list, returns a list of such data frames.

Examples

```
pbmc <- pbmc %>%
    selectBatchHVG() %>%
    scaleNotCenter() %>%
    runINMF()
factorGSEAres <- factorGSEA(pbmc, ccGeneHuman)
# Print summary of significant results
print(factorGSEAres)
summary(factorGSEAres)
# Make GSEA plot for certain gene set and factor
plot(factorGSEAres, geneSetName = 'g2m.genes', useFactor = 'Factor_1')
```

---

getFactorMarkers *Find shared and dataset-specific markers*

Description

Applies various filters to genes on the shared (W) and dataset-specific (V) components of the factorization, before selecting those which load most significantly on each factor (in a shared or dataset-specific way).

Usage

```
getFactorMarkers(
  object,
  dataset1,
  dataset2,
  factorShareThresh = 10,
  datasetSpecificity = NULL,
  logFCThresh = 1,
  pvalThresh = 0.05,
  nGenes = 30,
  printGenes = FALSE,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  factor.share.thresh = factorShareThresh,
  dataset.specificity = datasetSpecificity,
  log.fc.thresh = logFCThresh,
  pval.thresh = pvalThresh,
  num.genes = nGenes,
  print.genes = printGenes
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object with factorization results.
dataset1	Name of first dataset. Required.

dataset2 Name of second dataset. Required

factorShareThresh
Numeric. Only factors with a dataset specificity less than or equal to this threshold will be used. Default 10.

datasetSpecificity
Numeric vector. Pre-calculated dataset specificity if available. Length should match number of all factors available. Default NULL automatically calculates with calcDatasetSpecificity.

logFCThresh Numeric. Lower log-fold change threshold for differential expression in markers. Default 1.

pvalThresh Numeric. Upper p-value threshold for Wilcoxon rank test for gene expression. Default 0.05.

nGenes Integer. Max number of genes to report for each dataset. Default 30.

printGenes Logical. Whether to print ordered markers passing logFC, UMI and frac thresholds, when verbose = TRUE. Default FALSE.

verbose Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.

factor.share.thresh, dataset.specificity, log.fc.thresh, pval.thresh, num.genes, print.genes
Deprecated. See Usage section for replacement.

Value

A list object consisting of the following entries:

value of dataset1
data.frame of dataset1-specific markers

shared data.frame of shared markers

value of dataset1
data.frame of dataset2-specific markers

num_factors_V1 A frequency table indicating the number of factors each marker appears, in dataset1

num_factors_V2 A frequency table indicating the number of factors each marker appears, in dataset2

Examples

```
library(dplyr)
result <- getFactorMarkers(pbmcPlot, dataset1 = "ctrl", dataset2 = "stim")
print(class(result))
print(names(result))
result$shared %>% group_by(factor_num) %>% top_n(2, logFC)
```

getProportionMito *Calculate proportion mitochondrial contribution*

Description

Calculates proportion of mitochondrial contribution based on raw or normalized data.

Usage

```
getProportionMito(object, use.norm = FALSE, pattern = "^mt-")
```

Arguments

object	liger object.
use.norm	**Deprecated** Whether to use cell normalized data in calculating contribution. Default FALSE.
pattern	Regex pattern for identifying mitochondrial genes. Default "^mt-" for mouse.

Value

Named vector containing proportion of mitochondrial contribution for each cell.

Note

getProportionMito will be deprecated because runGeneralQC generally covers and expands its use case.

Examples

```
# Example dataset does not contain MT genes, expected to see a message
pbmc$mito <- getProportionMito(pbmc)
```

H5Apply *Apply function to chunks of H5 data in ligerDataset object*

Description

h5 calculation wrapper, that runs specified calculation with on-disk matrix in chunks

Usage

```
H5Apply(
  object,
  FUN,
  init = NULL,
  useData = c("rawData", "normData"),
  chunkSize = 1000,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose"),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A ligerDataset object.
FUN	A function that is applied to each chunk. See detail for restrictions.
init	Initialized result if it need to be updated iteratively. Default NULL.
useData	The slot name of the data to be processed. Choose from "rawData", "normData", "scaleData". Default "rawData".
chunkSize	Number if columns to be included in each chunk. Default 1000.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") which is TRUE if users have not set.
...	Other arguments to be passed to FUN.

Details

The FUN function has to have the first four arguments ordered by:

1. **chunk data:** A sparse matrix (dgCMatrix-class) containing maximum chunkSize columns.
2. **x-vector index:** The index that subscribes the vector of x slot of a dgCMatrix, which points to the values in each chunk. Mostly used when need to write a new sparse matrix to H5 file.
3. **cell index:** The column index of each chunk out of the whole original matrix
4. **Initialized result:** A customized object, the value passed to H5Apply(init) argument will be passed here in the first iteration. And the returned value of FUN will be iteratively passed here in next chunk iterations. So it is important to keep the object structure of the returned value consistent with init.

No default value to these four arguments should be pre-defined because H5Apply will automatically generate the input.

`importPBMC` *Import prepared dataset publically available*

Description

These are functions to download example datasets that are subset from public data.

- **PBMC** - Downsampled from GSE96583, Kang et al, Nature Biotechnology, 2018. Contains two scRNAseq datasets.
- **BMMC** - Downsampled from GSE139369, Granja et al, Nature Biotechnology, 2019. Contains two scRNAseq datasets and one scATAC data.
- **CGE** - Downsampled from GSE97179, Luo et al, Science, 2017. Contains one scRNAseq dataset and one DNA methylation data.

Usage

```
importPBMC(
  dir = getwd(),
  overwrite = FALSE,
  method = "libcurl",
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

importBMMC(
  dir = getwd(),
  overwrite = FALSE,
  method = "libcurl",
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

importCGE(
  dir = getwd(),
  overwrite = FALSE,
  method = "libcurl",
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`dir`	Path to download datasets. Default current working directory `getwd()`.
`overwrite`	Logical, if a file exists at corresponding download location, whether to re-download or directly use this file. Default `FALSE`.

method	method argument directly passed to download.file. Using "libcurl" while other options might not work depending on platform.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
...	Additional arguments passed to download.file

Value

Constructed liger object with QC performed and missing data removed.

Examples

```
pbmc <- importPBMC()
bmmc <- importBMMC()
cge <- importCGE()
```

---

imputeKNN *Impute the peak counts from gene expression data referring to an ATAC dataset after integration*

Description

This function is designed for creating peak data for a dataset with only gene expression. This function uses aligned cell factor loading to find nearest neighbors between cells from the queried dataset (without peak) and cells from reference dataset (with peak). And then impute the peak for the former basing on the weight. Therefore, the reference dataset selected must be of "atac" modality setting.

Usage

```
imputeKNN(
  object,
  reference,
  queries = NULL,
  nNeighbors = 20,
  weight = TRUE,
  norm = TRUE,
  scale = FALSE,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...,
  knn_k = nNeighbors
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object with aligned factor loading computed in advance.
reference	Name of a dataset containing peak data to impute into query dataset(s).
queries	Names of datasets to be augmented by imputation. Should not include reference. Default NULL uses all datasets except the reference.
nNeighbors	The maximum number of nearest neighbors to search. Default 20.
weight	Logical. Whether to use KNN distances as weight matrix. Default FALSE.
norm	Logical. Whether to normalize the imputed data. Default TRUE.
scale	Logical. Whether to scale but not center the imputed data. Default TRUE.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
...	Optional arguments to be passed to normalize when norm = TRUE.
knn_k	**Deprecated**. See Usage section for replacement.

Value

The input object where queried ligerDataset objects in datasets slot are replaced. These datasets will all be converted to ligerATACDataset class with an additional slot rawPeak to store the imputed peak counts, and normPeak for normalized imputed peak counts if norm = TRUE.

Examples

```
bmmc <- normalize(bmmc)
bmmc <- selectGenes(bmmc, datasets.use = "rna")
bmmc <- scaleNotCenter(bmmc)
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    bmmc <- runINMF(bmmc, k = 20)
    bmmc <- alignFactors(bmmc)
    bmmc <- normalizePeak(bmmc)
    bmmc <- imputeKNN(bmmc, reference = "atac", queries = "rna")
}
```

---

is.newLiger *Check if given liger object if under new implementation*

Description

Check if given liger object if under new implementation

Usage

```
is.newLiger(object)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object

Value

TRUE if the version of object is later than or equal to 1.99.0. Otherwise FALSE. It raises an error if input object is not of liger class.

Examples

```
is.newLiger(pbmc) # TRUE
```

---

isH5Liger *Check if a liger or ligerDataset object is made of HDF5 file*

Description

Check if a liger or ligerDataset object is made of HDF5 file

Usage

```
isH5Liger(object, dataset = NULL)
```

Arguments

object	A liger or ligerDataset object.
dataset	If object is of liger class, check a specific dataset. If NULL, Check if all datasets are made of HDF5 file. Default NULL.

Value

TRUE or FALSE for the specified check.

Examples

```
isH5Liger(pbmc)
isH5Liger(pbmc, "ctrl")
ctrl <- dataset(pbmc, "ctrl")
isH5Liger(ctrl)
```

liger-class *liger class*

Description

`liger` object is the main data container for LIGER analysis in R. The slot `datasets` is a list where each element should be a ligerDataset object containing dataset specific information, such as the expression matrices. The other parts of liger object stores information that can be shared across the analysis, such as the cell metadata.

This manual provides explanation to the `liger` object structure as well as usage of class-specific methods. Please see detail sections for more information.

For `liger` objects created with older versions of rliger package, please try updating the objects individually with `convertOldLiger`.

Usage

```
datasets(x, check = NULL)

datasets(x, check = TRUE) <- value

dataset(x, dataset = NULL)

dataset(x, dataset, type = NULL, qc = TRUE) <- value

cellMeta(
  x,
  columns = NULL,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  as.data.frame = FALSE,
  ...
)

cellMeta(
  x,
  columns = NULL,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  inplace = FALSE,
  check = FALSE
) <- value

defaultCluster(x, useDatasets = NULL, ...)

defaultCluster(x, name = NULL, useDatasets = NULL, ...) <- value
```

```
dimReds(x)

dimReds(x) <- value

dimRed(x, name = NULL, useDatasets = NULL, cellIdx = NULL, ...)

dimRed(x, name = NULL, useDatasets = NULL, cellIdx = NULL, ...) <- value

defaultDimRed(x, useDatasets = NULL, cellIdx = NULL)

defaultDimRed(x) <- value

varFeatures(x)

varFeatures(x, check = TRUE) <- value

varUnsharedFeatures(x, dataset = NULL)

varUnsharedFeatures(x, dataset, check = TRUE) <- value

commands(x, funcName = NULL, arg = NULL)

## S4 method for signature 'liger'
show(object)

## S4 method for signature 'liger'
dim(x)

## S4 method for signature 'liger'
dimnames(x)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,list'
dimnames(x) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger'
datasets(x, check = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,logical'
datasets(x, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,missing'
datasets(x, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger,character_OR_NULL'
dataset(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 method for signature 'liger,missing'
dataset(x, dataset = NULL)
```

```
## S4 method for signature 'liger,numeric'
dataset(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,character,missing,ANY,ligerDataset'
dataset(x, dataset, type = NULL, qc = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,character,ANY,ANY,matrixLike'
dataset(x, dataset, type = c("rawData", "normData"), qc = FALSE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,character,missing,ANY,NULL'
dataset(x, dataset, type = NULL, qc = TRUE) <- value

## S3 method for class 'liger'
names(x)

## S3 replacement method for class 'liger'
names(x) <- value

## S3 method for class 'liger'
length(x)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
lengths(x, use.names = TRUE)

## S4 method for signature 'liger,NULL'
cellMeta(
  x,
  columns = NULL,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  as.data.frame = FALSE,
  ...
)

## S4 method for signature 'liger,character'
cellMeta(
  x,
  columns = NULL,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  as.data.frame = FALSE,
  ...
)

## S4 method for signature 'liger,missing'
cellMeta(
  x,
```

```
  columns = NULL,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  as.data.frame = FALSE,
  ...
)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,missing'
cellMeta(x, columns = NULL, useDatasets = NULL, cellIdx = NULL, check = FALSE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,character'
cellMeta(
  x,
  columns = NULL,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  inplace = TRUE,
  check = FALSE
) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger'
rawData(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL'
rawData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,H5D'
rawData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger'
normData(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL'
normData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,H5D'
normData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger,ANY'
scaleData(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL'
scaleData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,H5D'
scaleData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,H5Group'
```

```
scaleData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger,character'
scaleUnsharedData(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 method for signature 'liger,numeric'
scaleUnsharedData(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL'
scaleUnsharedData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,H5D'
scaleUnsharedData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,H5Group'
scaleUnsharedData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,ANY'
getMatrix(
  x,
 slot = c("rawData", "normData", "scaleData", "scaleUnsharedData", "H", "V", "U", "A",
    "B", "W", "H.norm", "rawPeak", "normPeak"),
  dataset = NULL,
  returnList = FALSE
)

## S4 method for signature 'liger,ANY'
getH5File(x, dataset = NULL)

## S3 replacement method for class 'liger'
x[[i]] <- value

## S3 method for class 'liger'
x$name

## S3 replacement method for class 'liger'
x$name <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger'
defaultCluster(x, useDatasets = NULL, droplevels = FALSE, ...)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,character'
defaultCluster(x, name = NULL, useDatasets = NULL, ...) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,factor'
defaultCluster(x, name = NULL, useDatasets = NULL, droplevels = TRUE, ...) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,NULL'
```

```
defaultCluster(x, name = NULL, useDatasets = NULL, ...) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger'
dimReds(x)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,list'
dimReds(x) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger,missing_OR_NULL'
dimRed(x, name = NULL, useDatasets = NULL, cellIdx = NULL, ...)

## S4 method for signature 'liger,index'
dimRed(x, name = NULL, useDatasets = NULL, cellIdx = NULL, ...)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,index,ANY,ANY,NULL'
dimRed(x, name = NULL, useDatasets = NULL, cellIdx = NULL, ...) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,character,ANY,ANY,matrixLike'
dimRed(
  x,
  name = NULL,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  asDefault = NULL,
  inplace = FALSE,
  ...
) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger'
defaultDimRed(x, useDatasets = NULL, cellIdx = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,character'
defaultDimRed(x) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger'
varFeatures(x)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,character'
varFeatures(x, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger,ANY'
varUnsharedFeatures(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,ANY,ANY,character'
varUnsharedFeatures(x, dataset, check = TRUE) <- value

## S3 method for class 'liger'
fortify(model, data, ...)
```

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'
c(...)

## S4 method for signature 'liger'
commands(x, funcName = NULL, arg = NULL)

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset,missing'
varUnsharedFeatures(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,missing,ANY,character'
varUnsharedFeatures(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value
```

Arguments

x, object, model	A liger object
check	Logical, whether to perform object validity check on setting new value. Users are not supposed to set FALSE here.
value	Metadata value to be inserted
dataset	Name or numeric index of a dataset
type	When using dataset<- with a matrix like value, specify what type the matrix is. Choose from "rawData", "normData" or "scaleData".
qc	Logical, whether to perform general qc on added new dataset.
columns	The names of available variables in cellMeta slot. When as.data.frame = TRUE, please use variable names after coercion.
useDatasets	Setter or getter method should only apply on cells in specified datasets. Any valid character, numeric or logical subscriber is acceptable. Default NULL works with all datasets.
cellIdx	Valid cell subscription to subset retrieved variables. Default NULL uses all cells.
as.data.frame	Logical, whether to apply as.data.frame on the subscription. Default FALSE.
...	See detailed sections for explanation.
inplace	For cellMeta<- method, when columns is for existing variable and useDatasets or cellIdx indicate partial insertion to the object, whether to by default (TRUE) in-place insert value into the variable for selected cells or to replace the whole variable with non-selected part left as NA.
name	The name of available variables in cellMeta slot or the name of a new variable to store.
funcName, arg	See Command records section.
use.names	Whether returned vector should be named with dataset names.
slot	Name of slot to retrieve matrix from. Options shown in Usage.
returnList	Logical, whether to force return a list even when only one dataset-specific matrix (i.e. expression matrices, H, V or U) is requested. Default FALSE.
i	Name or numeric index of cell meta variable to be replaced

droplevels	Whether to remove unused cluster levels from the factor object fetched by defaultCluster(). Default FALSE.
asDefault	Whether to set the inserted dimension reduction matrix as default for visualization methods. Default NULL sets it when no default has been set yet, otherwise does not change current default.
data	fortify method required argument. Not used.

Value

See detailed sections for explanetion.

Input liger object updated with replaced/new variable in cellMeta(x).

Slots

datasets list of ligerDataset objects. Use generic dataset, dataset<-, datasets or datasets<- to interact with. See detailed section accordingly.

cellMeta DFrame object for cell metadata. Pre-existing metadata, QC metrics, cluster labeling and etc. are all stored here. Use generic cellMeta, cellMeta<-, $, [[]] or [[]]<- to interact with. See detailed section accordingly.

varFeatures Character vector of names of variable features. Use generic varFeatures or varFeatures<- to interact with. See detailed section accordingly.

W iNMF output matrix of shared gene loadings for each factor. See runIntegration.

H.norm Matrix of aligned factor loading for each cell. See alignFactors and runIntegration.

commands List of ligerCommand objects. Record of analysis. Use commands to retrieve information. See detailed section accordingly.

uns List for unstructured meta-info of analyses or presets.

version Record of version of rliger package

Dataset access

datasets() method only accesses the datasets slot, the list of ligerDataset objects. dataset() method accesses a single dataset, with subsequent cell metadata updates and checks bonded when adding or modifying a dataset. Therefore, when users want to modify something inside a ligerDataset while no cell metadata change should happen, it is recommended to use: datasets(x)[[name]] <- ligerD for efficiency, though the result would be the same as dataset(x, name) <- ligerD.

length() and names() methods are implemented to access the number and names of datasets. names<- method is supported for modifying dataset names, with taking care of the "dataset" variable in cell metadata.

Matrix access

For liger object, rawData(), normData, scaleData() and scaleUnsharedData() methods are exported for users to access the corresponding feature expression matrix with specification of one dataset. For retrieving a type of matrix from multiple datasets, please use getMatrix() method.

When only one matrix is expected to be retrieved by getMatrix(), the matrix itself will be returned. A list will be returned if multiple matrices is requested (by querying multiple datasets) or returnList is set to TRUE.

Cell metadata access

Three approaches are provided for access of cell metadata. A generic function `cellMeta` is implemented with plenty of options and multi-variable accessibility. Besides, users can use double-bracket (e.g. `ligerObj[[varName]]`) or dollor-sign (e.g. `ligerObj$nUMI`) to access or modify single variables.

For users' convenience of generating a customized ggplot with available cell metadata, the S3 method `fortify.liger` is implemented. With this under the hook, users can create simple ggplots by directly starting with `ggplot(ligerObj, aes(...))` where cell metadata variables can be directly thrown into `aes()`.

Special partial metadata insertion is implemented specifically for mapping categorical annotation from sub-population (subset object) back to original experiment (full-size object). For example, when sub-clustering and annotation is done for a specific cell-type of cells (stored in `subobj`) subset from an experiment (stored as `obj`), users can do `cellMeta(obj, "sub_ann", cellIdx = colnames(subobj)) <- subobj$sub_ann` to map the value back, leaving other cells non-annotated with NAs. Plotting with this variable will then also show NA cells with default grey color. Furthermore, sub-clustering labels for other cell types can also be mapped to the same variable. For example, `cellMeta(obj, "sub_ann",cellIdx = colnames(subobj2)) <- subobj2$sub_ann`. As long as the labeling variables are stored as factor class (categorical), the levels (category names) will be properly handled and merged. Other situations follow the R default behavior (e.g. categories might be converted to integer numbers if mapped to numerical variable in the original object). Note that this feature is only available with using the generic function `cellMeta` but not with the `` `[[` `` or `` `$` `` accessing methods due to syntax reasons.

The generic `defaultCluster` works as both getter and setter. As a setter, users can do `defaultCluster(obj) <- "existingVariableName"` to set a categorical variable as default cluster used for visualization or downstream analysis. Users can also do `defaultCluster(obj,"newVarName") <- factorOfLabels` to push new labeling into the object and set as default. For getter method, the function returns a factor object of the default cluster labeling. Argument `useDatasets` can be used for requiring that given or retrieved labeling should match with cells in specified datasets. We generally don't recommend setting `"dataset"` as a default cluster because it is a preserved (always existing) field in metadata and can lead to meaningless result when running analysis that utilizes both clustering information and the dataset source information.

Dimension reduction access

Currently, low-dimensional representaion of cells, presented as dense matrices, are all stored in `dimReds` slot, and can totally be accessed with generics `dimRed` and `dimRed<-`. Adding a dimRed to the object looks as simple as `dimRed(obj, "name") <- matrixLike`. It can be retrieved back with `dimRed(obj, "name")`. Similar to having a default cluster labeling, we also constructed the feature of default dimRed. It can be set with `defaultDimRed(obj) <- "existingMatLikeVar"` and the matrix can be retrieved with `defaultDimRed(obj)`.

Variable feature access

The `varFeatures` slot allows for character vectors of gene names. `varFeatures(x)` returns this vector and `value` for `varFeatures<-` method has to be a character vector or `NULL`. The replacement method, when `check = TRUE` performs checks on gene name consistency check across the `scaleData`, `H`, `V` slots of inner `ligerDataset` objects as well as the `W` and `H.norm` slots of the input `liger` object.

Command records

rliger functions, that perform calculation and update the `liger` object, will be recorded in a `ligerCommand` object and stored in the `commands` slot, a list, of `liger` object. Method `commands()` is implemented to retrieve or show the log history. Running with `funcName = NULL` (default) returns all command labels. Specifying `funcName` allows partial matching to all command labels and returns a subset list (of `ligerCommand` object) of matches (or the `ligerCommand` object if only one match found). If `arg` is further specified, a subset list of parameters from the matches will be returned. For example, requesting a list of resolution values used in all louvain cluster attempts: `commands(ligerObj, "louvainCluster","resolution")`

Dimensionality

For a `liger` object, the column orientation is assigned for cells. Due to the data structure, it is hard to define a row index for the `liger` object, which might contain datasets that vary in number of genes.

Therefore, for `liger` objects, `dim` and `dimnames` returns `NA`/`NULL` for rows and total cell counts/barcodes for the columns.

For direct call of `dimnames<-` method, `value` should be a list with `NULL` as the first element and valid cell identifiers as the second element. For `colnames<-` method, the character vector of cell identifiers. `rownames<-` method is not applicable.

Subsetting

For more detail of subsetting a `liger` object or a ligerDataset object, please check out `subsetLiger` and `subsetLigerDataset`. Here, we set the S4 method "single-bracket" `[` as a quick wrapper to subset a `liger` object. Note that `j` serves as cell subscriptor which can be any valid index refering the collection of all cells (i.e. `rownames(cellMeta(obj))`). While `i`, the feature subscriptor can only be character vector because the features for each dataset can vary. `...` arugments are passed to `subsetLiger` so that advanced options are allowed.

Combining multiple liger object

The list of `datasets` slot, the rows of `cellMeta` slot and the list of `commands` slot will be simply concatenated. Variable features in `varFeatures` slot will be taken a union. The W and $H.norm$ matrices are not taken into account for now.

Examples

```
# Methods for base generics
pbmcPlot
print(pbmcPlot)
dim(pbmcPlot)
ncol(pbmcPlot)
colnames(pbmcPlot)[1:5]
pbmcPlot[varFeatures(pbmcPlot)[1:10], 1:10]
names(pbmcPlot)
length(pbmcPlot)

# rliger generics
```

```
## Retrieving dataset(s), replacement methods available
datasets(pbmcPlot)
dataset(pbmcPlot, "ctrl")
dataset(pbmcPlot, 2)

## Retrieving cell metadata, replacement methods available
cellMeta(pbmcPlot)
head(pbmcPlot[["nUMI"]])

## Retrieving dimemtion reduction matrix
head(dimRed(pbmcPlot, "UMAP"))

## Retrieving variable features, replacement methods available
varFeatures(pbmcPlot)

## Command record/history
pbmcPlot <- scaleNotCenter(pbmcPlot)
commands(pbmcPlot)
commands(pbmcPlot, funcName = "scaleNotCenter")

# S3 methods
pbmcPlot2 <- pbmcPlot
names(pbmcPlot2) <- paste0(names(pbmcPlot), 2)
c(pbmcPlot, pbmcPlot2)

library(ggplot2)
ggplot(pbmcPlot, aes(x = UMAP_1, y = UMAP_2)) + geom_point()
cellMeta(pbmc)
# Add new variable
pbmc[["newVar"]] <- 1
cellMeta(pbmc)
# Change existing variable
pbmc[["newVar"]][1:3] <- 1:3
cellMeta(pbmc)
```

`ligerATACDataset-class` *Subclass of ligerDataset for ATAC modality*

Description

Inherits from ligerDataset class. Contained slots can be referred with the link.

Slots

`rawPeak` sparse matrix

`normPeak` sparse matrix

`ligerCommand-class` *ligerCommand object: Record the input and time of a LIGER function call*

Description

ligerCommand object: Record the input and time of a LIGER function call

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'ligerCommand'
show(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	A `ligerCommand` object

Slots

`funcName` Name of the function

`time` A time stamp object

`call` A character string converted from system call

`parameters` List of all arguments except the liger object. Large object are summarized to short string.

`objSummary` List of attributes of the liger object as a snapshot when command is operated.

`ligerVersion` Character string converted from `packageVersion("rliger")`.

`dependencyVersion` Named character vector of version number, if any dependency library has a chance to be included by the function. A dependency might only be invoked under certain conditions, such as using an alternative algorithm, which a call does not actually reach to, but it would still be included for this call.

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
cmd <- commands(pbmc, "normalize")
cmd
```

ligerDataset-class *ligerDataset class*

Description

Object for storing dastaset specific information. Will be embedded within a higher level liger object

Usage

```
rawData(x, dataset = NULL)

rawData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

normData(x, dataset = NULL)

normData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

scaleData(x, dataset = NULL)

scaleData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

scaleUnsharedData(x, dataset = NULL)

scaleUnsharedData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

getMatrix(x, slot = "rawData", dataset = NULL, returnList = FALSE)

h5fileInfo(x, info = NULL)

h5fileInfo(x, info = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

getH5File(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset,missing'
getH5File(x, dataset = NULL)

featureMeta(x, check = NULL)

featureMeta(x, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset'
show(object)

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset'
dim(x)

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset'
```

```
dimnames(x)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,list'
dimnames(x) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset'
rawData(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL'
rawData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,H5D'
rawData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset'
normData(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL'
normData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,H5D'
normData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset,missing'
scaleData(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL'
scaleData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,H5D'
scaleData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,H5Group'
scaleData(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset,missing'
scaleUnsharedData(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,missing,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL'
scaleUnsharedData(x, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,missing,ANY,H5D'
scaleUnsharedData(x, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset,missing,ANY,H5Group'
scaleUnsharedData(x, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset,ANY,missing,missing'
```

```
getMatrix(
  x,
 slot = c("rawData", "normData", "scaleData", "scaleUnsharedData", "H", "V", "U", "A",
    "B"),
  dataset = NULL
)

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset'
h5fileInfo(x, info = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset'
h5fileInfo(x, info = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'ligerDataset'
featureMeta(x, check = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerDataset'
featureMeta(x, check = TRUE) <- value

## S3 method for class 'ligerDataset'
cbind(x, ..., deparse.level = 1)

## S4 method for signature 'ligerATACDataset,ANY,missing,missing'
getMatrix(
  x,
 slot = c("rawData", "normData", "scaleData", "scaleUnsharedData", "H", "V", "U", "A",
    "B", "rawPeak", "normPeak"),
  dataset = NULL
)
```

Arguments

x, object	A ligerDataset object.
dataset	Not applicable for ligerDataset methods.
check	Whether to perform object validity check on setting new value.
value	See detail sections for requirements
slot	The slot name when using getMatrix.
returnList	Not applicable for ligerDataset methods.
info	Name of the entry in h5fileInfo slot.
...	See detailed sections for explanation.
deparse.level	Not used here.

Slots

rawData Raw data. Feature by cell matrix. Most of the time, sparse matrix of integer numbers for RNA and ATAC data.

normData Normalized data. Feature by cell matrix. Sparse if the rawData it is normalized from is sparse.

scaleData Scaled data, usually with subset shared variable features, by cells. Most of the time sparse matrix of float numbers. This is the data used for iNMF factorization.

scaleUnsharedData Scaled data of variable features not shared with other datasets. This is the data used for UINMF factorization.

varUnsharedFeatures Variable features not shared with other datasets.

V iNMF output matrix holding the dataset specific gene loading of each factor. Feature by factor matrix.

A Online iNMF intermediate product matrix.

B Online iNMF intermediate product matrix.

H iNMF output matrix holding the factor loading of each cell. Factor by cell matrix.

U UINMF output matrix holding the unshared variable gene loading of each factor. Feature by factor matrix.

h5fileInfo list of meta information of HDF5 file used for constructing the object.

featureMeta Feature metadata, DataFrame object.

colnames Character vector of unique cell identifiers.

rownames Character vector of unique feature names.

Matrix access

For ligerDataset object, rawData(), normData, scaleData() and scaleUnsharedData() methods are exported for users to access the corresponding feature expression matrix. Replacement methods are also available to modify the slots.

For other matrices, such as the H and V, which are dataset specific, please use getMatrix() method with specifying slot name. Directly accessing slot with @ is generally not recommended.

H5 file and information access

A ligerDataset object has a slot called h5fileInfo, which is a list object. The first element is called $H5File, which is an H5File class object and is the connection to the input file. The second element is $filename which stores the absolute path of the H5 file in the current machine. The third element $formatType stores the name of preset being used, if applicable. The other following keys pair with paths in the H5 file that point to specific data for constructing a feature expression matrix.

h5fileInfo() method access the list described above and simply retrieves the corresponding value. When info = NULL, returns the whole list. When length(info) == 1, returns the requested list value. When more info requested, returns a subset list.

The replacement method modifies the list elements and corresponding slot value (if applicable) at the same time. For example, running h5fileInfo(obj, "rawData") <- newPath not only updates the list, but also updates the rawData slot with the H5D class data at "newPath" in the H5File object.

getH5File() is a wrapper and is equivalent to h5fileInfo(obj, "H5File").

Feature metadata access

A slot `featureMeta` is included for each `ligerDataset` object. This slot requires a `DataFrame-class` object, which is the same as `cellMeta` slot of a liger object. However, the associated S4 methods only include access to the whole table for now. Internal information access follows the same way as data.frame operation. For example, `featureMeta(ligerD)$nCell` or `featureMeta(ligerD)[varFeatures(ligerObj), "gene_var"]`.

Dimensionality

For a `ligerDataset` object, the column orientation is assigned for cells and rows are for features. Therefore, for `ligerDataset` objects, `dim()` returns a numeric vector of two numbers which are number of features and number of cells. `dimnames()` returns a list of two character vectors, which are the feature names and the cell barcodes.

For direct call of `dimnames<-` method, `value` should be a list with a character vector of feature names as the first element and cell identifiers as the second element. For `colnames<-` method, the character vector of cell identifiers. For `rownames<-` method, the character vector of feature names.

Subsetting

For more detail of subsetting a `liger` object or a ligerDataset object, please check out `subsetLiger` and `subsetLigerDataset`. Here, we set the S3 method "single-bracket" `[` as a quick wrapper to subset a `ligerDataset` object. `i` and `j` serves as feature and cell subscriptor, respectively, which can be any valid index refering the available features and cells in a dataset. `...` arugments are passed to `subsetLigerDataset` so that advanced options are allowed.

Concatenate ligerDataset

`cbind()` method is implemented for concatenating `ligerDataset` objects by cells. When applying, all feature expression matrix will be merged with taking a union of all features for the rows.

Examples

```
ctrl <- dataset(pbmc, "ctrl")

# Methods for base generics
ctrl
print(ctrl)
dim(ctrl)
ncol(ctrl)
nrow(ctrl)
colnames(ctrl)[1:5]
rownames(ctrl)[1:5]
ctrl[1:5, 1:5]

# rliger generics
## raw data
m <- rawData(ctrl)
class(m)
dim(m)
## normalized data
```

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
ctrl <- dataset(pbmc, "ctrl")
m <- normData(ctrl)
class(m)
dim(m)
## scaled data
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc)
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc)
ctrl <- dataset(pbmc, "ctrl")
m <- scaleData(ctrl)
class(m)
dim(m)
n <- scaleData(pbmc, "ctrl")
identical(m, n)
## Any other matrices
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    pbmc <- runOnlineINMF(pbmc, k = 20, minibatchSize = 100)
    ctrl <- dataset(pbmc, "ctrl")
    V <- getMatrix(ctrl, "V")
    V[1:5, 1:5]
    Vs <- getMatrix(pbmc, "V")
    length(Vs)
    names(Vs)
    identical(Vs$ctrl, V)
}
```

---

ligerMethDataset-class *Subclass of ligerDataset for Methylation modality*

Description

Inherits from ligerDataset class. Contained slots can be referred with the link. `scaleNotCenter` applied on datasets of this class will automatically be taken by reversing the normalized data instead of scaling the variable features.

---

ligerRNADataset-class *Subclass of ligerDataset for RNA modality*

Description

Inherits from ligerDataset class. Contained slots can be referred with the link. This subclass does not have any different from the default `ligerDataset` class except the class name.

ligerSpatialDataset-class *Subclass of ligerDataset for Spatial modality*

Description

Inherits from ligerDataset class. Contained slots can be referred with the link.

Slots

`coordinate` dense matrix

ligerToSeurat *Convert between liger and Seurat object*

Description

For converting a liger object to a Seurat object, the `rawData`, `normData`, and `scaleData` from each dataset, the `cellMeta`, `H.norm` and `varFeatures` slot will be included. Compatible with V4 and V5. It is not recommended to use this conversion if your liger object contains datasets from various modalities.

Usage

```
ligerToSeurat(
  object,
  assay = NULL,
  identByDataset = FALSE,
  merge = FALSE,
  nms = NULL,
  renormalize = NULL,
  use.liger.genes = NULL,
  by.dataset = identByDataset
)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object to be converted
`assay`	Name of assay to store the data. Default `NULL` detects by dataset modality. If the object contains various modality, default to `"LIGER"`. Default dataset modality setting is understood as `"RNA"`.
`identByDataset`	Logical, whether to combine dataset variable and default cluster labeling to set the Idents. Default `FALSE`.
`merge`	Logical, whether to merge layers of different datasets into one. Not recommended. Default `FALSE`.

nms	**[Defunct]** Will be ignored because new object structure does not have related problem.
renormalize	**[Defunct]** Will be ignored because since Seurat V5, layers of data can exist at the same time and it is better to left it for users to do it by themselves.
use.liger.genes	**[Defunct]** Will be ignored and will always set LIGER variable features to the place.
by.dataset	**[Superseded]**. Use `identByDataset` instead.

Value

Always returns Seurat object(s) of the latest version. By default a Seurat object with split layers, e.g. with layers like "counts.ctrl" and "counts.stim". If `merge = TRUE`, return a single Seurat object with layers for all datasets merged.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("SeuratObject", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("Seurat", quietly = TRUE)) {
    seu <- ligerToSeurat(pbmc)
}
```

`linkGenesAndPeaks` *Linking genes to putative regulatory elements*

Description

Evaluate the relationships between pairs of genes and peaks based on specified distance metric. Usually used for inferring the correlation between gene expression and imputed peak counts for datasets without the modality originally (i.e. applied to `imputeKNN` result).

Usage

```
linkGenesAndPeaks(
  object,
  useDataset,
  pathToCoords,
  useGenes = NULL,
  method = c("spearman", "pearson", "kendall"),
  alpha = 0.05,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  path_to_coords = pathToCoords,
  genes.list = useGenes,
  dist = method
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object, with datasets that is of ligerATACDataset class in the datasets slot.
useDataset	Name of one dataset, with both normalized gene expression and normalized peak counts available.
pathToCoords	Path tothe gene coordinates file, usually a BED file.
useGenes	Character vector of gene names to be tested. Default NULL uses all genes available in useDataset.
method	Choose the type of correlation to calculate, from "spearman", "pearson" and "kendall". Default "spearman"
alpha	Numeric, significance threshold for correlation p-value. Peak-gene correlations with p-values below this threshold are considered significant. Default 0.05.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
path_to_coords, genes.list, dist	**Deprecated**. See Usage section for replacement.

Value

A sparse matrix with peak names as rows and gene names as columns, with each element indicating the correlation between peak i and gene j, 0 if the gene and peak are not significantly linked.

See Also

imputeKNN

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("GenomicRanges", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("IRanges", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("psych", quietly = TRUE)) {
    bmmc <- normalize(bmmc)
    bmmc <- selectGenes(bmmc)
    bmmc <- scaleNotCenter(bmmc)
    bmmc <- runINMF(bmmc, miniBatchSize = 100)
    bmmc <- alignFactors(bmmc)
    bmmc <- normalizePeak(bmmc)
    bmmc <- imputeKNN(bmmc, reference = "atac", queries = "rna")
    corr <- linkGenesAndPeaks(
        bmmc, useDataset = "rna",
        pathToCoords = system.file("extdata/hg19_genes.bed", package = "rliger")
    )
}
```

louvainCluster-deprecated

[Superseded] *Louvain algorithm for community detection*

Description

After quantile normalization, users can additionally run the Louvain algorithm for community detection, which is widely used in single-cell analysis and excels at merging small clusters into broad cell classes.

Arguments

object	liger object. Should run quantile_norm before calling.
k	The maximum number of nearest neighbours to compute. (default 20)
resolution	Value of the resolution parameter, use a value above (below) 1.0 if you want to obtain a larger (smaller) number of communities. (default 1.0)
prune	Sets the cutoff for acceptable Jaccard index when computing the neighborhood overlap for the SNN construction. Any edges with values less than or equal to this will be set to 0 and removed from the SNN graph. Essentially sets the strigency of pruning (0 — no pruning, 1 — prune everything). (default 1/15)
eps	The error bound of the nearest neighbor search. (default 0.1)
nRandomStarts	Number of random starts. (default 10)
nIterations	Maximal number of iterations per random start. (default 100)
random.seed	Seed of the random number generator. (default 1)
verbose	Print messages (TRUE by default)
dims.use	Indices of factors to use for clustering. Default NULL uses all available factors.

Value

object with refined cluster assignment updated in "louvain_cluster" variable in cellMeta slot. Can be fetched with object$louvain_cluster

See Also

rliger-deprecated

makeFeatureMatrix *Fast calculation of feature count matrix*

Description

Fast calculation of feature count matrix

Usage

```
makeFeatureMatrix(bedmat, barcodes)
```

Arguments

bedmat	A feature count list generated by bedmap
barcodes	A list of barcodes

Value

A feature count matrix with features as rows and barcodes as columns

Examples

```
## Not run:
gene.counts <- makeFeatureMatrix(genes.bc, barcodes)
promoter.counts <- makeFeatureMatrix(promoters.bc, barcodes)
samnple <- gene.counts + promoter.counts

## End(Not run)
```

makeInteractTrack-deprecated

[Deprecated] *Export predicted gene-pair interaction*

Description

Export the predicted gene-pair interactions calculated by upstream function linkGenesAndPeaks into an Interact Track file which is compatible with UCSC Genome Browser.

Arguments

corr.mat	A sparse matrix of correlation with peak names as rows and gene names as columns.
path_to_coords	Path to the gene coordinates file.
genes.list	Character vector of gene names to be exported. Default NULL uses all genes available in corrMat.
output_path	Path of filename where the output file will be stored. If a folder, a file named "Interact_Track.bed" will be created. Default current working directory.

Value

No return value. A file located at `outputPath` will be created.

See Also

`rliger-deprecated`, `exportInteractTrack`

`makeRiverplot-deprecated`

[Deprecated] *Generate a river (Sankey) plot*

Description

Creates a riverplot to show how separate cluster assignments from two datasets map onto a joint clustering. The joint clustering is by default the object clustering, but an external one can also be passed in. Uses the riverplot package to construct riverplot object and then plot.

Arguments

`object`	`liger` object. Should run quantileAlignSNF before calling.
`cluster1`	Cluster assignments for dataset 1. Note that cluster names should be distinct across datasets.
`cluster2`	Cluster assignments for dataset 2. Note that cluster names should be distinct across datasets.
`cluster_consensus`	Optional external consensus clustering (to use instead of object clusters)
`min.frac`	Minimum fraction of cluster for edge to be shown (default 0.05).
`min.cells`	Minumum number of cells for edge to be shown (default 10).
`river.yscale`	y-scale to pass to riverplot – scales the edge with values by this factor, can be used to squeeze vertically (default 1).
`river.lty`	Line style to pass to riverplot (default 0).
`river.node_margin`	Node_margin to pass to riverplot – how much vertical space to keep between the nodes (default 0.1).
`label.cex`	Size of text labels (default 1).
`label.col`	Color of text labels (defualt "black").
`lab.srt`	Angle of text labels (default 0).
`river.usr`	Coordinates at which to draw the plot in form (x0, x1, y0, y1).
`node.order`	Order of clusters in each set (list with three vectors of ordinal numbers). By default will try to automatically order them appropriately.

Value

`object` with refined cluster assignment updated in `"louvain_cluster"` variable in `cellMeta` slot. Can be fetched with `object$louvain_cluster`

See Also

`rliger-deprecated`

`mapCellMeta` *Create new variable from categories in cellMeta*

Description

Designed for fast variable creation when a new variable is going to be created from existing variable. For example, multiple samples can be mapped to the same study design condition, clusters can be mapped to cell types.

Usage

```
mapCellMeta(object, from, newTo = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object.
`from`	The name of the original variable to be mapped from.
`newTo`	The name of the new variable to store the mapped result. Default `NULL` returns the new variable (factor class).
`...`	Mapping criteria, argument names are original existing categories in the `from` and values are new categories in the new variable.

Value

When `newTo = NULL`, a factor object of the new variable. Otherwise, the input object with variable `newTo` updated in `cellMeta(object)`.

Examples

```
pbmc <- mapCellMeta(pbmc, from = "dataset", newTo = "modal",
                    ctrl = "rna", stim = "rna")
```

mergeH5 *Merge hdf5 files*

Description

This function merges hdf5 files generated from different libraries (cell ranger by default) before they are preprocessed through Liger pipeline.

Usage

```
mergeH5(
  file.list,
  library.names,
  new.filename,
  format.type = "10X",
  data.name = NULL,
  indices.name = NULL,
  indptr.name = NULL,
  genes.name = NULL,
  barcodes.name = NULL
)
```

Arguments

file.list	List of path to hdf5 files.
library.names	Vector of library names (corresponding to file.list)
new.filename	String of new hdf5 file name after merging (default new.h5).
format.type	string of HDF5 format (10X CellRanger by default).
data.name	Path to the data values stored in HDF5 file.
indices.name	Path to the indices of data points stored in HDF5 file.
indptr.name	Path to the pointers stored in HDF5 file.
genes.name	Path to the gene names stored in HDF5 file.
barcodes.name	Path to the barcodes stored in HDF5 file.

Value

Directly generates newly merged hdf5 file.

Examples

```
## Not run:
# For instance, we want to merge two datasets saved in HDF5 files (10X
# CellRanger) paths to datasets: "library1.h5","library2.h5"
# dataset names: "lib1", "lib2"
# name for output HDF5 file: "merged.h5"
```

```
mergeH5(list("library1.h5","library2.h5"), c("lib1","lib2"), "merged.h5")

## End(Not run)
```

`mergeSparseAll` *Merge matrices while keeping the union of rows*

Description

`mergeSparseAll` takes in a list of DGEs, with genes as rows and cells as columns, and merges them into a single DGE. Also adds `libraryNames` to colnames from each DGE if expected to be overlap (common with 10X barcodes). Values in `rawData` or `normData` slot of a ligerDataset object can be processed with this.

For a list of dense matrices, usually the values in `scaleData` slot of a ligerDataset object, please use `mergeDenseAll` which works in the same way.

Usage

```
mergeSparseAll(
  datalist,
  libraryNames = NULL,
  mode = c("union", "intersection")
)

mergeDenseAll(datalist, libraryNames = NULL)
```

Arguments

`datalist`	List of dgCMatrix for `mergeSparseAll` or a list of matrix for `mergeDenseAll`.
`libraryNames`	Character vector to be added as the prefix for the barcodes in each matrix in `datalist`. Length should match with the number of matrices. Default `NULL` do not modify the barcodes.
`mode`	Whether to take the `"union"` or `"intersection"` of features when merging. Default `"union"`.

Value

dgCMatrix or matrix with all barcodes in `datalist` as columns and the union of genes in `datalist` as rows.

Examples

```
rawDataList <- getMatrix(pbmc, "rawData")
merged <- mergeSparseAll(rawDataList, libraryNames = names(pbmc))
```

`modalOf` *Return preset modality of a ligerDataset object or that of all datasets in a liger object*

Description

Return preset modality of a ligerDataset object or that of all datasets in a liger object

Usage

```
modalOf(object)
```

Arguments

`object`	a ligerDataset object or a liger object

Value

A single character of modality setting value for ligerDataset `object`, or a named vector for liger object, where the names are dataset names.

Examples

```
modalOf(pbmc)
ctrl <- dataset(pbmc, "ctrl")
modalOf(ctrl)
ctrl.atac <- as.ligerDataset(ctrl, modal = "atac")
modalOf(ctrl.atac)
```

`normalize` **[Deprecated]** *Normalize raw counts data*

Description

Perform library size normalization on raw counts input. As for the preprocessing step of iNMF integration, by default we don't multiply the normalized values with a scale factor, nor do we take the log transformation. Applicable S3 methods can be found in Usage section.

`normalizePeak` is designed for datasets of "atac" modality, i.e. stored in ligerATACDataset. S3 method for various container object is not supported yet due to difference in architecture design.

Usage

```
normalize(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'matrix'
normalize(object, log = FALSE, scaleFactor = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class 'dgCMatrix'
normalize(object, log = FALSE, scaleFactor = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class 'DelayedArray'
normalize(
  object,
  log = FALSE,
  scaleFactor = NULL,
  chunk = getOption("ligerChunkSize", 20000),
  overwrite = FALSE,
  returnStats = FALSE,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'ligerDataset'
normalize(
  object,
  chunk = getOption("ligerChunkSize", 20000),
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
normalize(
  object,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  format.type = NULL,
  remove.missing = NULL,
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
normalize(object, assay = NULL, layer = "counts", save = "ligerNormData", ...)

normalizePeak(
  object,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object
...	Arguments to be passed to S3 methods. The "liger" method calls the "ligerDataset" method, which then calls "dgCMatrix" method. normalizePeak directly calls normalize.dgCMatrix.
log	Logical. Whether to do a log(x + 1) transform on the normalized data. Default TRUE.
scaleFactor	Numeric. Scale the normalized expression value by this factor before transformation. NULL for not scaling. Default 1e4.
chunk	Integer. Number of maximum number of cells in each chunk when working on HDF5 file based ligerDataset. Default 20000.
overwrite	Logical. When writing newly computed HDF5 array to a separate HDF5 file, whether to overwrite the existing file. Default FALSE raises an error when the file already exists.
returnStats	Logical. Used in LIGER internal workflow to allow captureing precalculated statistics for downstream use. Default FALSE only returns the normalized data for DelayedArray method.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
useDatasets	A character vector of the names, a numeric or logical vector of the index of the datasets to be normalized. Should specify ATACseq datasets when using normalizePeak. Default NULL normalizes all valid datasets.
format.type, remove.missing	**Deprecated**. The functionality of these is covered through other parts of the whole workflow and is no long needed. Will be ignored if specified.
assay	Name of assay to use. Default NULL uses current active assay.
layer	Where the input raw counts should be from. Default "counts". For older Seurat, always retrieve from counts slot.
save	For Seurat>=4.9.9, the name of layer to store normalized data. Default "ligerNormData". For older Seurat, stored to data slot.

Value

Updated object.

- dgCMatrix method - Returns processed dgCMatrix object
- ligerDataset method - Updates the normData slot of the object
- liger method - Updates the normData slot of chosen datasets
- Seurat method - Adds a named layer in chosen assay (V5), or update the data slot of the chosen assay (<=V4)
- normalizePeak - Updates the normPeak slot of chosen datasets.

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
```

`online_iNMF-deprecated` **[Deprecated]** *Perform online iNMF on scaled datasets*

Description

Please turn to `runOnlineINMF` or `runIntegration`.

Perform online integrative non-negative matrix factorization to represent multiple single-cell datasets in terms of H, W, and V matrices. It optimizes the iNMF objective function using online learning (non-negative least squares for H matrix, hierarchical alternating least squares for W and V matrices), where the number of factors is set by k. The function allows online learning in 3 scenarios: (1) fully observed datasets; (2) iterative refinement using continually arriving datasets; and (3) projection of new datasets without updating the existing factorization. All three scenarios require fixed memory independent of the number of cells.

For each dataset, this factorization produces an H matrix (cells by k), a V matrix (k by genes), and a shared W matrix (k by genes). The H matrices represent the cell factor loadings. W is identical among all datasets, as it represents the shared components of the metagenes across datasets. The V matrices represent the dataset-specific components of the metagenes.

Arguments

`object`	`liger` object with data stored in HDF5 files. Should normalize, select genes, and scale before calling.
`X_new`	List of new datasets for scenario 2 or scenario 3. Each list element should be the name of an HDF5 file.
`projection`	Perform data integration by shared metagene (W) projection (scenario 3). (default FALSE)
`W.init`	Optional initialization for W. (default NULL)
`V.init`	Optional initialization for V (default NULL)
`H.init`	Optional initialization for H (default NULL)
`A.init`	Optional initialization for A (default NULL)
`B.init`	Optional initialization for B (default NULL)
`k`	Inner dimension of factorization–number of metagenes (default 20). A value in the range 20-50 works well for most analyses.
`lambda`	Regularization parameter. Larger values penalize dataset-specific effects more strongly (ie. alignment should increase as lambda increases). We recommend always using the default value except possibly for analyses with relatively small differences (biological replicates, male/female comparisons, etc.) in which case a lower value such as 1.0 may improve reconstruction quality. (default 5.0).
`max.epochs`	Maximum number of epochs (complete passes through the data). (default 5)
`miniBatch_max_iters`	Maximum number of block coordinate descent (HALS algorithm) iterations to perform for each update of W and V (default 1). Changing this parameter is not recommended.

miniBatch_size	Total number of cells in each minibatch (default 5000). This is a reasonable default, but a smaller value such as 1000 may be necessary for analyzing very small datasets. In general, minibatch size should be no larger than the number of cells in the smallest dataset.
h5_chunk_size	Chunk size of input hdf5 files (default 1000). The chunk size should be no larger than the batch size.
seed	Random seed to allow reproducible results (default 123).
verbose	Print progress bar/messages (TRUE by default)

Value

liger object with H, W, V, A and B slots set.

---

optimizeALS-deprecated

[Deprecated] *Perform iNMF on scaled datasets*

Description

Please turn to runINMF or runIntegration.

Perform integrative non-negative matrix factorization to return factorized H, W, and V matrices. It optimizes the iNMF objective function using block coordinate descent (alternating non-negative least squares), where the number of factors is set by k. TODO: include objective function equation here in documentation (using deqn)

For each dataset, this factorization produces an H matrix (cells by k), a V matrix (k by genes), and a shared W matrix (k by genes). The H matrices represent the cell factor loadings. W is held consistent among all datasets, as it represents the shared components of the metagenes across datasets. The V matrices represent the dataset-specific components of the metagenes.

Arguments

object	liger object. Should normalize, select genes, and scale before calling.
k	Inner dimension of factorization (number of factors). Run suggestK to determine appropriate value; a general rule of thumb is that a higher k will be needed for datasets with more sub-structure.
lambda	Regularization parameter. Larger values penalize dataset-specific effects more strongly (ie. alignment should increase as lambda increases). Run suggestLambda to determine most appropriate value for balancing dataset alignment and agreement (default 5.0).
thresh	Convergence threshold. Convergence occurs when lobj0-objl/(mean(obj0,obj)) < thresh. (default 1e-6)
max.iters	Maximum number of block coordinate descent iterations to perform (default 30).

nrep	Number of restarts to perform (iNMF objective function is non-convex, so taking the best objective from multiple successive initializations is recommended). For easier reproducibility, this increments the random seed by 1 for each consecutive restart, so future factorizations of the same dataset can be run with one rep if necessary. (default 1)
H.init	Initial values to use for H matrices. (default NULL)
W.init	Initial values to use for W matrix (default NULL)
V.init	Initial values to use for V matrices (default NULL)
rand.seed	Random seed to allow reproducible results (default 1).
print.obj	Print objective function values after convergence (default FALSE).
verbose	Print progress bar/messages (TRUE by default)
...	Arguments passed to other methods

Value

liger object with H, W, and V slots set.

See Also

rliger-deprecated

---

optimizeNewData *Perform factorization for new data*

Description

Uses an efficient strategy for updating that takes advantage of the information in the existing factorization. Assumes that variable features are presented in the new datasets. Two modes are supported (controlled by merge):

- Append new data to existing datasets specified by useDatasets. Here the existing V matrices for the target datasets will directly be used as initialization, and new H matrices for the merged matrices will be initialized accordingly.
- Set new data as new datasets. Initial V matrices for them will be copied from datasets specified by useDatasets, and new H matrices will be initialized accordingly.

Usage

```
optimizeNewData(
  object,
  dataNew,
  useDatasets,
  merge = TRUE,
  lambda = NULL,
  nIteration = 30,
```

```
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose"),
  new.data = dataNew,
  which.datasets = useDatasets,
  add.to.existing = merge,
  max.iters = nIteration,
  thresh = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object. Should have integrative factorization performed e.g. (runINMF) in advance.
dataNew	Named list of **raw count** matrices, genes by cells.
useDatasets	Selection of datasets to append new data to if merge = TRUE, or the datasets to inherit V matrices from and initialize the optimization when merge = FALSE. Should match the length and order of dataNew.
merge	Logical, whether to add the new data to existing datasets or treat as totally new datasets (i.e. calculate new V matrices). Default TRUE.
lambda	Numeric regularization parameter. By default NULL, this will use the lambda value used in the latest factorization.
nIteration	Number of block coordinate descent iterations to perform. Default 30.
seed	Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default 1. Used by runINMF factorization.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") which is TRUE if users have not set.
new.data, which.datasets, add.to.existing, max.iters	These arguments are now replaced by others and will be removed in the future. Please see usage for replacement.
thresh	**Deprecated**. New implementation of iNMF does not require a threshold for convergence detection. Setting a large enough nIteration will bring it to convergence.

Value

object with W slot updated with the new W matrix, and the H and V slots of each ligerDataset object in the datasets slot updated with the new dataset specific H and V matrix, respectively.

See Also

runINMF, optimizeNewK, optimizeNewLambda

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc)
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc)
```

```
# Only running a few iterations for fast examples
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    pbmc <- runINMF(pbmc, k = 20, nIteration = 2)
    # Create fake new data by increasing all non-zero count in "ctrl" by 1,
    # and make unique cell identifiers
    ctrl2 <- rawData(dataset(pbmc, "ctrl"))
    ctrl2@x <- ctrl2@x + 1
    colnames(ctrl2) <- paste0(colnames(ctrl2), 2)
    pbmcNew <- optimizeNewData(pbmc, dataNew = list(ctrl2 = ctrl2),
                               useDatasets = "ctrl", nIteration = 2)
}
```

`optimizeNewK` *Perform factorization for new value of k*

Description

This uses an efficient strategy for updating that takes advantage of the information in the existing factorization. It is most recommended for values of `kNew` smaller than current value (`k`, which is set when running `runINMF`), where it is more likely to speed up the factorization.

Usage

```
optimizeNewK(
  object,
  kNew,
  lambda = NULL,
  nIteration = 30,
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose"),
  k.new = kNew,
  max.iters = nIteration,
  rand.seed = seed,
  thresh = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object. Should have integrative factorization performed e.g. (`runINMF`) in advance.
`kNew`	Number of factors of factorization.
`lambda`	Numeric regularization parameter. By default `NULL`, this will use the lambda value used in the latest factorization.
`nIteration`	Number of block coordinate descent iterations to perform. Default `30`.
`seed`	Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default `1`. Used by `runINMF` factorization and initialization only when if `kNew` is greater than `k`.

verbose — Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default `getOption("ligerVerbose")` which is `TRUE` if users have not set.

k.new, max.iters, rand.seed — These arguments are now replaced by others and will be removed in the future. Please see usage for replacement.

thresh — **Deprecated**. New implementation of iNMF does not require a threshold for convergence detection. Setting a large enough `nIteration` will bring it to convergence.

Value

`object` with `W` slot updated with the new W matrix, and the `H` and `V` slots of each ligerDataset object in the `datasets` slot updated with the new dataset specific H and V matrix, respectively.

See Also

`runINMF`, `optimizeNewLambda`, `optimizeNewData`

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc)
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc)
# Only running a few iterations for fast examples
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    pbmc <- runINMF(pbmc, k = 20, nIteration = 2)
    pbmc <- optimizeNewK(pbmc, kNew = 25, nIteration = 2)
}
```

---

optimizeNewLambda *Perform factorization for new lambda value*

Description

Uses an efficient strategy for updating that takes advantage of the information in the existing factorization; always uses previous k. Recommended mainly when re-optimizing for higher lambda and when new lambda value is significantly different; otherwise may not return optimal results.

Usage

```
optimizeNewLambda(
  object,
  lambdaNew,
  nIteration = 30,
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose"),
  new.lambda = lambdaNew,
  max.iters = nIteration,
```

```
  rand.seed = seed,
  thresh = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object. Should have integrative factorization (e.g. runINMF) performed in advance.
lambdaNew	Numeric regularization parameter. Larger values penalize dataset-specific effects more strongly.
nIteration	Number of block coordinate descent iterations to perform. Default 30.
seed	Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default 1. Used by runINMF factorization.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") which is TRUE if users have not set.
new.lambda, max.iters, rand.seed	These arguments are now replaced by others and will be removed in the future. Please see usage for replacement.
thresh	**Deprecated**. New implementation of iNMF does not require a threshold for convergence detection. Setting a large enough nIteration will bring it to convergence.

Value

Input object with optimized factorization values updated. including the W matrix in liger object, and H and V matrices in each ligerDataset object in the datasets slot.

See Also

runINMF, optimizeNewK, optimizeNewData

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc)
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc)
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    # Only running a few iterations for fast examples
    pbmc <- runINMF(pbmc, k = 20, nIteration = 2)
    # pbmc <- optimizeNewLambda(pbmc, lambdaNew = 5.5, nIteration = 2)
}
```

optimizeSubset *Perform factorization for subset of data*

Description

Uses an efficient strategy for updating that takes advantage of the information in the existing factorization.

Usage

```
optimizeSubset(
  object,
  clusterVar = NULL,
  useClusters = NULL,
  lambda = NULL,
  nIteration = 30,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  scaleDatasets = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose"),
  cell.subset = cellIdx,
  cluster.subset = useClusters,
  max.iters = nIteration,
  datasets.scale = scaleDatasets,
  thresh = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object. Should have integrative factorization (e.g. runINMF) performed in advance.
clusterVar, useClusters	Together select the clusters to subset the object conveniently. clusterVar is the name of variable in cellMeta(object) and useClusters should be vector of names of clusters in the variable. clusterVar is by default the default cluster (See runCluster, or defaultCluster at "Cell metadata access"). Users can otherwise select cells explicitly with cellIdx for complex conditions. useClusters overrides cellIdx.
lambda	Numeric regularization parameter. By default NULL, this will use the lambda value used in the latest factorization.
nIteration	Maximum number of block coordinate descent iterations to perform. Default 30.
cellIdx	Valid index vector that applies to the whole object. See subsetLiger for requirement. Default NULL.
scaleDatasets	Names of datasets to re-scale after subsetting. Default NULL does not re-scale.

seed — Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default 1. Used by runINMF factorization.

verbose — Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") which is TRUE if users have not set.

cell.subset, cluster.subset, max.iters, datasets.scale — These arguments are now replaced by others and will be removed in the future. Please see usage for replacement.

thresh — **Deprecated**. New implementation of iNMF does not require a threshold for convergence detection. Setting a large enough nIteration will bring it to convergence.

Value

Subset object with factorization matrices optimized, including the W matrix in liger object, and W and V matrices in each ligerDataset object in the datasets slot. scaleData in the ligerDataset objects of datasets specified by scaleDatasets will also be updated to reflect the subset.

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc)
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc)
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    # Only running a few iterations for fast examples
    pbmc <- runINMF(pbmc, k = 20, nIteration = 2)
    pbmc <- optimizeSubset(pbmc, cellIdx = sort(sample(ncol(pbmc), 200)),
                           nIteration = 2)
}
```

---

pbmc *liger object of PBMC subsample data with Control and Stimulated datasets*

Description

liger object of PBMC subsample data with Control and Stimulated datasets

Usage

```
pbmc
```

Format

liger object with two datasets named by "ctrl" and "stim".

Source

https://www.nature.com/articles/nbt.4042

References

Hyun Min Kang and et. al., Nature Biotechnology, 2018

`pbmcPlot` *liger object of PBMC subsample data with plotting information available*

Description

This data was generated from data `"pbmc"` with default parameter integration pipeline: normalize, selectGenes, scaleNotCenter, runINMF, runCluster, runUMAP. To minimize the object size distributed with the package, rawData and scaleData were removed. Genes are downsampled to the top 50 variable genes, for smaller normData and W matrix.

Usage

```
pbmcPlot
```

Format

liger object with two datasets named by "ctrl" and "stim".

Source

https://www.nature.com/articles/nbt.4042

References

Hyun Min Kang and et. al., Nature Biotechnology, 2018

`plot.factorGSEA` *GSEA plot for specific gene set and factor using factorGSEA results*

Description

GSEA plot for specific gene set and factor using factorGSEA results

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'factorGSEA'
plot(
  x,
  y,
  geneSetName,
  useFactor,
  xTitleSize = 10,
  xTextSize = 8,
  yTitleSize = 10,
  yTextSize = 8,
  titleSize = 12,
  captionTextSize = 8,
  ESLineColor = "green",
  ESLinewidth = 1,
  hitsLineColor = "black",
  hitsLinewidth = 0.5,
  loadingBarColor = "grey",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

x	A factorGSEA object.
y	Not used, for S3 method convention.
geneSetName	A character string for the gene set name to plot.
useFactor	A character string (e.g. 'Factor_1') or just numeric index for the factor name to plot.
xTitleSize, yTitleSize	Numeric, size for x or y axis titles, respectively. Default 10.
xTextSize, yTextSize	Numeric, size for x or y axis text, respectively. Default 8.
titleSize	Numeric, size for the main plot title. Default 12.
captionTextSize	Numeric, size for the caption text. Default 8.
ESLineColor	Color for the enrichment score line. Default 'green'.
ESLinewidth	Numeric, line width for the enrichment score line. Default 1.
hitsLineColor	Color for the hits line. Default 'black'.
hitsLinewidth	Numeric, line width for the hits line. Default 0.5.
loadingBarColor	Color for the loading bar. Default 'grey'.
...	Not used.

Value

ggplot object

plotBarcodeRank *Create barcode-rank plot for each dataset*

Description

This function ranks the total count of each cell within each dataset and make line plot. This function is simply for examining the input raw count data and does not infer any recommended cutoff for removing non-cell barcodes.

Usage

```
plotBarcodeRank(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object.
...	Arguments passed on to .ggScatter, .ggplotLigerTheme
	dotSize,dotAlpha Numeric, controls the size or transparency of all dots. Default getOption("ligerDotSize") (1) and 0.9.
	raster Logical, whether to rasterize the plot. Default NULL automatically rasterize the plot when number of total dots to be plotted exceeds 100,000.
	title,subtitle,xlab,ylab Main title, subtitle or X/Y axis title text. By default, no main title or subtitle will be set, and X/Y axis title will be the names of variables used for plotting. Use NULL to hide elements. TRUE for xlab or ylab shows default values.
	baseSize One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.
	panelBorder Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default FALSE.
	plotly Whether to use plotly to enable web based interactive browsing for the plot. Requires installation of package "plotly". Default FALSE.

Value

A list object of ggplot for each dataset

Examples

```
plotBarcodeRank(pbmc)
```

plotCellViolin *Generate violin/box plot(s) using liger object*

Description

This function allows for using available cell metadata, feature expression or factor loading to generate violin plot, and grouping the data with available categorical cell metadata. Available categorical cell metadata can be used to form the color annotation. When it is different from the grouping, it forms a nested grouping. Multiple y-axis variables are allowed from the same specification of `slot`, and this returns a list of violin plot for each. Users can further split the plot(s) by grouping on cells (e.g. datasets).

Usage

```
plotCellViolin(
  object,
  y,
  groupBy = NULL,
  slot = c("cellMeta", "rawData", "normData", "scaleData", "H.norm", "H"),
  yFunc = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  colorBy = NULL,
  splitBy = NULL,
  titles = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`object`	liger object
`y`	Available variable name in `slot` to look for the value to visualize.
`groupBy, colorBy`	Available variable name in `cellMeta` slot to look for categorical grouping. See details. Default `NULL` produces no grouping and all-black graphic elements.
`slot`	Choose the slot to find the `y` variable. See Details. Default `"cellMeta"`.
`yFunc`	A function object that expects a vector/factor/data.frame retrieved by `y` as the only input, and returns an object of the same size, so that the y-axis is replaced by this output. Useful when, for example, users need to scale the gene expression shown on plot.
`cellIdx`	Character, logical or numeric index that can subscribe cells. Missing or `NULL` for all cells.
`splitBy`	Character vector of categorical variable names in `cellMeta` slot. Split all cells by groupings on this/these variable(s) to produce a violin plot containing only the cells in each group. Default `NULL`.

titles Title text. A character scalar or a character vector with as many elements as multiple plots are supposed to be generated. Default NULL.

... Arguments passed on to .ggCellViolin, .ggplotLigerTheme

violin,box,dot Logical, whether to add violin plot, box plot or dot (scatter) plot, respectively. Layers are added in the order of dot, violin, and violin on the top surface. By default, only violin plot is generated.

violinAlpha,boxAlpha Numeric, controls the transparency of layers. Default 0.8, 0.6, respectively.

violinWidth,boxWidth Numeric, controls the width of violin/box bounding box. Default 0.9 and 0.4.

dotColor,dotSize Numeric, globally controls the appearance of all dots. Default "black" and getOption("ligerDotSize") (1).

xlabAngle Numeric, counter-clockwise rotation angle of X axis label text. Default 45.

raster Logical, whether to rasterize the dot plot. Default NULL automatically rasterizes the dot plot when number of total cells to be plotted exceeds 100,000.

seed Random seed for reproducibility. Default 1.

title,subtitle,xlab,ylab Main title, subtitle or X/Y axis title text. By default, no main title or subtitle will be set, and X/Y axis title will be the names of variables used for plotting. Use NULL to hide elements. TRUE for xlab or ylab shows default values.

legendFillTitle Legend title text for fill aesthetics, often used for violin, box, bar plots. Default NULL shows the original variable name.

showLegend Whether to show the legend. Default TRUE.

legendPosition Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from "top", "bottom", "left" or "right". Default "right".

baseSize One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

titleSize,xTitleSize,yTitleSize,legendTitleSize Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default NULL controls by baseSize + 2.

subtitleSize,xTextSize,yTextSize,legendTextSize Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default NULL controls by baseSize.

panelBorder Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default FALSE.

colorLabels Character vector for modifying category names in a color legend. Passed to ggplot2::scale_color_manual(labels). Default NULL uses original levels of the factor.

colorValues Character vector of colors for modifying category colors in a color legend. Passed to ggplot2::scale_color_manual(values). Default NULL uses internal selected palette when <= 26 categories are presented, otherwise ggplot hues.

legendNRow,legendNCol Integer, when too many categories in one variable, arranges number of rows or columns. Default NULL, automatically split to ceiling(levels(variable)/15) columns.

plotly Whether to use plotly to enable web based interactive browsing for the plot. Requires installation of package "plotly". Default FALSE.

Details

Available option for slot include: "cellMeta", "rawData", "normData", "scaleData", "H.norm" and "H". When "rawData", "normData" or "scaleData", y has to be a character vector of feature names. When "H.norm" or "H", colorBy can be any valid index to select one factor of interests. Note that character index follows "Factor_[k]" format, with replacing [k] with an integer.

When "cellMeta", y has to be an available column name in the table. Note that, for y as well as groupBy, colorBy and splitBy since a matrix object is feasible in cellMeta table, using a column (e.g. named as "column1" in a certain matrix (e.g. named as "matrixVar") should follow the syntax of "matrixVar.column1". When the matrix does not have a "colname" attribute, the subscription goes with "matrixVar.V1", "matrixVar.V2" and etc. These are based on the nature of as.data.frame method on a DataFrame object.

groupBy is basically send to ggplot2::aes(x), while colorBy is for the "colour" aesthetics. Specifying colorBy without groupBy visually creates grouping but there will not be varying values on the x-axis, so boxWidth will be forced to the same value as violinWidth under this situation.

Value

A ggplot object when a single plot is intended. A list of ggplot objects, when multiple y variables and/or splitBy are set. When plotly = TRUE, all ggplot objects become plotly (htmlwidget) objects.

Examples

```
plotCellViolin(pbmcPlot, y = "nUMI", groupBy = "dataset", slot = "cellMeta")
plotCellViolin(pbmcPlot, y = "nUMI", groupBy = "leiden_cluster",
               slot = "cellMeta", splitBy = "dataset",
               colorBy = "leiden_cluster",
               box = TRUE, dot = TRUE,
               ylab = "Total counts per cell")
plotCellViolin(pbmcPlot, y = "S100A8", slot = "normData",
               yFunc = function(x) log2(10000*x + 1),
               groupBy = "dataset", colorBy = "leiden_cluster",
               box = TRUE, ylab = "S100A8 Expression")
```

---

plotClusterFactorDot *Make dot plot of factor loading in cell groups*

Description

This function produces dot plots. Each column represent a group of cells specified by groupBy, each row is a factor specified by useDims. The color of dots reflects mean of factor loading of specified factors in each cell group and sizes reflects the percentage of cells that have loadings of a factor in a group. We utilize ComplexHeatmap for simplified management of adding annotation and slicing subplots. This was inspired by the implementation in scCustomize.

Usage

```
plotClusterFactorDot(
  object,
  groupBy = NULL,
  useDims = NULL,
  useRaw = FALSE,
  splitBy = NULL,
  factorScaleFunc = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  legendColorTitle = "Mean Factor\nLoading",
  legendSizeTitle = "Percent\nLoaded",
  viridisOption = "viridis",
  verbose = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object
groupBy	The names of the columns in cellMeta slot storing categorical variables. Loading data would be aggregated basing on these, together with splitBy. Default uses default clusters.
useDims	A Numeric vector to specify exact factors of interests. Default NULL uses all available factors.
useRaw	Whether to use un-aligned cell factor loadings (H matrices). Default FALSE.
splitBy	The names of the columns in cellMeta slot storing categorical variables. Dotplot panel splitting would be based on these. Default NULL.
factorScaleFunc	A function object applied to factor loading matrix for scaling the value for better visualization. Default NULL.
cellIdx	Valid cell subscription. See subsetLiger. Default NULL for using all cells.
legendColorTitle	Title for colorbar legend. Default "Mean Factor\nLoading".
legendSizeTitle	Title for size legend. Default "Percent\nLoaded"
viridisOption	Name of available viridis palette. See viridis. Default "viridis".
verbose	Logical. Whether to show progress information. Mainly when subsetting data. Default FALSE.
...	Additional theme setting arguments passed to .complexHeatmapDotPlot and heatmap setting arguments passed to Heatmap. See Details.

Details

For ..., please notice that arguments colorMat, sizeMat, featureAnnDF, cellSplitVar, cellLabels and viridisOption from .complexHeatmapDotPlot are already occupied by this function internally. A lot of arguments from Heatmap have also been occupied: matrix,name, heatmap_legend_param,

rect_gp, col, layer_fun, km, border, border_gp,column_gap, row_gap, cluster_row_slices, cluster_rows, row_title_gp,row_names_gp, row_split, row_labels, cluster_column_slices, cluster_columns,column_split, column_title_gp, column_title, column_labels, column_names_gp,top_annot

Value

HeatmapList object.

Examples

```
plotClusterFactorDot(pbmcPlot)
```

---

plotClusterGeneDot *Make dot plot of gene expression in cell groups*

Description

This function produces dot plots. Each column represent a group of cells specified by groupBy, each row is a gene specified by features. The color of dots reflects mean of normalized expression of specified genes in each cell group and sizes reflects the percentage of cells expressing each gene in a group. We utilize ComplexHeatmap for simplified management of adding annotation and slicing subplots. This was inspired by the implementation in scCustomize.

Usage

```
plotClusterGeneDot(
  object,
  features,
  groupBy = NULL,
  splitBy = NULL,
  featureScaleFunc = function(x) log2(10000 * x + 1),
  cellIdx = NULL,
  legendColorTitle = "Mean\nExpression",
  legendSizeTitle = "Percent\nExpressed",
  viridisOption = "magma",
  verbose = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object
features	Use a character vector of gene names to make plain dot plot like a heatmap. Use a data.frame where the first column is gene names and second column is a grouping variable (e.g. subset runMarkerDEG output)

groupBy — The names of the columns in cellMeta slot storing categorical variables. Expression data would be aggregated basing on these, together with splitBy. Default uses default clusters.

splitBy — The names of the columns in cellMeta slot storing categorical variables. Dotplot panel splitting would be based on these. Default NULL.

featureScaleFunc — A function object applied to normalized data for scaling the value for better visualization. Default function(x) log2(10000*x + 1)

cellIdx — Valid cell subscription. See subsetLiger. Default NULL for using all cells.

legendColorTitle — Title for colorbar legend. Default "Mean\nExpression".

legendSizeTitle — Title for size legend. Default "Percent\nExpressed"

viridisOption — Name of available viridis palette. See viridis. Default "magma".

verbose — Logical. Whether to show progress information. Mainly when subsetting data. Default FALSE.

... — Additional theme setting arguments passed to .complexHeatmapDotPlot and heatmap setting arguments passed to Heatmap. See Details.

Details

For ..., please notice that arguments colorMat, sizeMat, featureAnnDF, cellSplitVar, cellLabels and viridisOption from .complexHeatmapDotPlot are already occupied by this function internally. A lot of arguments from Heatmap have also been occupied: matrix,name, heatmap_legend_param, rect_gp, col, layer_fun, km, border, border_gp,column_gap, row_gap, cluster_row_slices, cluster_rows, row_title_gp,row_names_gp, row_split, row_labels, cluster_column_slices, cluster_columns,column_split, column_title_gp, column_title, column_labels, column_names_gp,top_annot

Value

HeatmapList object.

Examples

```
# Use character vector of genes
features <- varFeatures(pbmcPlot)[1:10]
plotClusterGeneDot(pbmcPlot, features = features)

# Use data.frame with grouping information, with more tweak on plot
features <- data.frame(features, rep(letters[1:5], 2))
plotClusterGeneDot(pbmcPlot, features = features,
                   clusterFeature = TRUE, clusterCell = TRUE, maxDotSize = 6)
```

`plotClusterGeneViolin` *Create violin plot for multiple genes grouped by clusters*

Description

Make violin plots for each given gene grouped by cluster variable and stack along y axis.

Usage

```
plotClusterGeneViolin(
  object,
  gene,
  groupBy = NULL,
  colorBy = NULL,
  box = FALSE,
  boxAlpha = 0.1,
  yFunc = function(x) log1p(x * 10000),
  showLegend = !is.null(colorBy),
  xlabAngle = 40,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object.
`gene`	Character vector of gene names.
`groupBy`	The name of an available categorical variable in `cellMeta` slot. This forms the main x-axis columns. Use `FALSE` for no grouping. Default `NULL` looks clustering result but will not group if no clustering is found.
`colorBy`	The name of another categorical variable in `cellMeta` slot. This split the main grouping columns and color the violins. Default `NULL` will not split and color the violins.
`box`	Logical, whether to add boxplot. Default `FALSE`.
`boxAlpha`	Numeric, transparency of boxplot. Default `0.1`.
`yFunc`	Function to transform the y-axis. Default is `log1p(x*1e4)`. Set to `NULL` for no transformation.
`showLegend`	Whether to show the legend. Default `FALSE`.
`xlabAngle`	Numeric, counter-clockwise rotation angle in degrees of X axis label text. Default `40`.
`...`	Arguments passed on to `.ggplotLigerTheme`
	`title,subtitle,xlab,ylab` Main title, subtitle or X/Y axis title text. By default, no main title or subtitle will be set, and X/Y axis title will be the names of variables used for plotting. Use `NULL` to hide elements. `TRUE` for `xlab` or `ylab` shows default values.

`legendFillTitle` Legend title text for fill aesthetics, often used for violin, box, bar plots. Default `NULL` shows the original variable name.

`legendPosition` Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from `"top"`, `"bottom"`, `"left"` or `"right"`. Default `"right"`.

`baseSize` One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

`titleSize,xTitleSize,yTitleSize,legendTitleSize` Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default `NULL` controls by `baseSize + 2`.

`subtitleSize,xTextSize,yTextSize,legendTextSize` Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default `NULL` controls by `baseSize`.

`yFacetSize` Size of facet strip label text on y-axis. Default `NULL` controls by `baseSize - 2`.

`panelBorder` Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default `FALSE`.

`colorLabels` Character vector for modifying category names in a color legend. Passed to `ggplot2::scale_color_manual(labels)`. Default `NULL` uses original levels of the factor.

`colorValues` Character vector of colors for modifying category colors in a color legend. Passed to `ggplot2::scale_color_manual(values)`. Default `NULL` uses internal selected palette when <= 26 categories are presented, otherwise ggplot hues.

`legendNRow,legendNCol` Integer, when too many categories in one variable, arranges number of rows or columns. Default `NULL`, automatically split to `ceiling(levels(variable)/15)` columns.

`plotly` Whether to use plotly to enable web based interactive browsing for the plot. Requires installation of package "plotly". Default `FALSE`.

Details

If `xlab` need to be set, set `xlabAngle` at the same time. This is due to that the argument parsing mechanism will partially match it to main function arguments before matching the `...` arguments.

Value

A ggplot object.

Examples

```
plotClusterGeneViolin(pbmcPlot, varFeatures(pbmcPlot)[1:10])
```

`plotDensityDimRed` *Create density plot basing on specified coordinates*

Description

This function shows the cell density presented in a 2D dimensionality reduction coordinates. Density is shown with coloring and contour lines. A scatter plot of the dimensionality reduction is added as well. The density plot can be splitted by categorical variables (e.g. `"dataset"`), while the scatter plot will always be shown for all cells in subplots as a reference of the global structure.

Usage

```
plotDensityDimRed(
  object,
  useDimRed = NULL,
  splitBy = NULL,
  combinePlot = TRUE,
  minDensity = 8,
  contour = TRUE,
  contourLineWidth = 0.3,
  contourBins = 5,
  dot = TRUE,
  dotColor = "grey",
  dotSize = 0.6,
  dotAlpha = 0.3,
  dotRaster = NULL,
  title = NULL,
  legendFillTitle = "Density",
  colorPalette = "magma",
  colorDirection = -1,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object
`useDimRed`	Name of the variable storing dimensionality reduction result in the `cellMeta` slot. Default uses default dimension reduction.
`splitBy`	Character vector of categorical variable names in `cellMeta` slot. Split all cells by groupings on this/these variable(s) to produce a density plot containing only the cells in each group. Default `NULL`.
`combinePlot`	Logical, whether to utilize `plot_grid` to combine multiple plots into one. Default `TRUE` returns combined ggplot. `FALSE` returns a list of ggplot or a single ggplot when only one plot is requested.
`minDensity`	A positive number to filter out low density region colored on plot. Default `8`. Setting zero will show density on the whole panel.

`contour` Logical, whether to draw the contour line. Default `TRUE`.

`contourLineWidth`
Numeric, the width of the contour line. Default `0.3`.

`contourBins` Number of contour bins. Higher value generates more contour lines. Default `5`.

`dot` Logical, whether to add scatter plot of all cells, even when density plot is splitted with `splitBy`. Default `TRUE`.

`dotColor`, `dotSize`, `dotAlpha`
Numeric, controls the appearance of all dots. Default `"grey"`, `0.6` and `0.3`, respectively.

`dotRaster` Logical, whether to rasterize the scatter plot. Default `NULL` automatically rasterizes the dots when number of total cells to be plotted exceeds 100,000.

`title` Text of main title of the plots. Default `NULL`. Length of character vector input should match with number of plots generated.

`legendFillTitle`
Text of legend title. Default `"Density"`.

`colorPalette` Name of the option for `scale_fill_viridis_c`. Default `"magma"`.

`colorDirection` Color gradient direction for `scale_fill_viridis_c`. Default `-1`.

`...` Arguments passed on to `.ggplotLigerTheme`

`title,subtitle,xlab,ylab` Main title, subtitle or X/Y axis title text. By default, no main title or subtitle will be set, and X/Y axis title will be the names of variables used for plotting. Use `NULL` to hide elements. `TRUE` for `xlab` or `ylab` shows default values.

`showLegend` Whether to show the legend. Default `TRUE`.

`legendPosition` Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from `"top"`, `"bottom"`, `"left"` or `"right"`. Default `"right"`.

`baseSize` One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

`titleSize,xTitleSize,yTitleSize,legendTitleSize` Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default `NULL` controls by `baseSize + 2`.

`subtitleSize,xTextSize,yTextSize,legendTextSize` Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default `NULL` controls by `baseSize`.

`panelBorder` Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default `FALSE`.

`plotly` Whether to use plotly to enable web based interactive browsing for the plot. Requires installation of package "plotly". Default `FALSE`.

Value

A ggplot object when only one plot is generated, A ggplot object combined with `plot_grid` when multiple plots and `combinePlot = TRUE`. A list of ggplot when multiple plots and `combinePlot = FALSE`.

Examples

```
# Example dataset has small number of cells, thus cutoff adjusted.
plotDensityDimRed(pbmcPlot, minDensity = 1)
```

---

plotDimRed *Generate scatter plot(s) using liger object*

Description

This function allows for using available cell metadata to build the x-/y-axis. Available per-cell data can be used to form the color/shape annotation, including cell metadata, raw or processed gene expression, and unnormalized or aligned factor loading. Multiple coloring variable is allowed from the same specification of `slot`, and this returns a list of plots with different coloring values. Users can further split the plot(s) by grouping on cells (e.g. datasets).

Usage

```
plotDimRed(
  object,
  colorBy = NULL,
  useDimRed = NULL,
 slot = c("cellMeta", "rawData", "normData", "scaleData", "H.norm", "H", "normPeak",
    "rawPeak"),
  colorByFunc = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  splitBy = NULL,
  shapeBy = NULL,
  titles = NULL,
  ...
)

plotClusterDimRed(object, useCluster = NULL, useDimRed = NULL, ...)

plotDatasetDimRed(object, useDimRed = NULL, ...)

plotByDatasetAndCluster(
  object,
  useDimRed = NULL,
  useCluster = NULL,
  combinePlot = TRUE,
  ...
)

plotGeneDimRed(
  object,
  features,
  useDimRed = NULL,
```

```
  log = TRUE,
  scaleFactor = 10000,
  zeroAsNA = TRUE,
  colorPalette = "C",
  ...
)

plotPeakDimRed(
  object,
  features,
  useDimRed = NULL,
  log = TRUE,
  scaleFactor = 10000,
  zeroAsNA = TRUE,
  colorPalette = "C",
  ...
)

plotFactorDimRed(
  object,
  factors,
  useDimRed = NULL,
  trimHigh = 0.03,
  zeroAsNA = TRUE,
  colorPalette = "D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object.
colorBy	Available variable name in specified slot to look for color annotation information. See details. Default NULL generates all-black dots.
useDimRed	Name of the variable storing dimensionality reduction result in the cellMeta(object). Default NULL use default dimRed.
slot	Choose the slot to find the colorBy variable. See details. Default "cellMeta".
colorByFunc	Default NULL. A function object that expects a vector/factor/data.frame retrieved by colorBy as the only input, and returns an object of the same size, so that the all color "aes" are replaced by this output. Useful when, for example, users need to scale the gene expression shown on plot.
cellIdx	Character, logical or numeric index that can subscribe cells. Missing or NULL for all cells.
splitBy	Character vector of categorical variable names in cellMeta slot. Split all cells by groupings on this/these variable(s) to produce a scatter plot containing only the cells in each group. Default NULL.
shapeBy	Available variable name in cellMeta slot to look for categorical annotation to be reflected by dot shapes. Default NULL.

titles Title text. A character scalar or a character vector with as many elements as multiple plots are supposed to be generated. Default NULL.

... Arguments passed on to .ggScatter, .ggplotLigerTheme

dotOrder Controls the order that each dot is added to the plot. Choose from "shuffle", "ascending", or "descending". Default "shuffle", useful when coloring by categories that overlaps (e.g. "dataset"), "ascending" can be useful when coloring by a continuous variable (e.g. gene expression) where high values needs more highlight. NULL use default order.

dotSize,dotAlpha Numeric, controls the size or transparency of all dots. Default getOption("ligerDotSize") (1) and 0.9.

trimHigh,trimLow Numeric, limit the largest or smallest value of continuous colorBy variable. Default NULL.

raster Logical, whether to rasterize the plot. Default NULL automatically rasterize the plot when number of total dots to be plotted exceeds 100,000.

labelBy A variable name available in plotDF. If the variable is categorical (a factor), the label position will be the median coordinates of all dots within the same group. Unique labeling in character vector for each dot is also acceptable. Default colorBy.

labelText Logical, whether to show text label at the median position of each categorical group specified by colorBy. Default TRUE. Does not work when continuous coloring is specified.

labelTextSize Numeric, controls the size of label size when labelText = TRUE. Default 4.

seed Random seed for reproducibility. Default 1.

title,subtitle,xlab,ylab Main title, subtitle or X/Y axis title text. By default, no main title or subtitle will be set, and X/Y axis title will be the names of variables used for plotting. Use NULL to hide elements. TRUE for xlab or ylab shows default values.

legendColorTitle Legend title text for color aesthetics, often used for categorical or continuous coloring of dots. Default NULL shows the original variable name.

legendShapeTitle Legend title text for shape aesthetics, often used for shaping dots by categorical variable. Default NULL shows the original variable name.

showLegend Whether to show the legend. Default TRUE.

legendPosition Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from "top", "bottom", "left" or "right". Default "right".

baseSize One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

titleSize,xTitleSize,yTitleSize,legendTitleSize Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default NULL controls by baseSize + 2.

subtitleSize,xTextSize,yTextSize,legendTextSize Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default NULL controls by baseSize.

legendDotSize Allow dots in legend region to be large enough to see the colors/shapes clearly. Default 4.

panelBorder Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default FALSE.

colorLabels Character vector for modifying category names in a color legend. Passed to ggplot2::scale_color_manual(labels). Default NULL uses original levels of the factor.

colorValues Character vector of colors for modifying category colors in a color legend. Passed to ggplot2::scale_color_manual(values). Default NULL uses internal selected palette when <= 26 categories are presented, otherwise ggplot hues.

legendNRow,legendNCol Integer, when too many categories in one variable, arranges number of rows or columns. Default NULL, automatically split to ceiling(levels(variable)/15) columns.

colorDirection Choose 1 or -1. Applied when colorPalette is from Viridis options. Default -1 use darker color for higher value, while 1 reverses this direction.

colorLow,colorMid,colorHigh,colorMidPoint All four of these must be specified to customize palette with

naColor The color code for NA values. Default "#DEDEDE". scale_colour_gradient2. Default NULL.

plotly Whether to use plotly to enable web based interactive browsing for the plot. Requires installation of package "plotly". Default FALSE.

useCluster Name of variable in cellMeta(object). Default NULL uses default cluster.

combinePlot Logical, whether to utilize plot_grid to combine multiple plots into one. Default TRUE returns combined ggplot. FALSE returns a list of ggplot.

features, factors
Name of genes or index of factors that need to be visualized.

log Logical. Whether to log transform the normalized expression of genes. Default TRUE.

scaleFactor Number to be multiplied with the normalized expression of genes before log transformation. Default 1e4. NULL for not scaling.

zeroAsNA Logical, whether to swap all zero values to NA so naColor will be used to represent non-expressing features. Default TRUE.

colorPalette Name of viridis palette. See viridis for options. Default "C" ("plasma") for gene expression and "D" ("viridis") for factor loading.

trimHigh Number for highest cut-off to limit the outliers. Factor loading above this value will all be trimmed to this value. Default 0.03.

Details

Available option for slot include: "cellMeta", "rawData", "normData", "scaleData", "H.norm" and "H". When "rawData", "normData" or "scaleData", colorBy has to be a character vector of feature names. When "H.norm" or "H", colorBy can be any valid index to select one factor of interests. Note that character index follows "Factor_[k]" format, with replacing [k] with an integer.

When "cellMeta", colorBy has to be an available column name in the table. Note that, for colorBy as well as x, y, shapeBy and splitBy, since a matrix object is feasible in cellMeta

table, using a column (e.g. named as "column1" in a certain matrix (e.g. named as "matrixVar") should follow the syntax of "matrixVar.column1". When the matrix does not have a "colname" attribute, the subscription goes with "matrixVar.V1", "matrixVar.V2" and etc. Use "UMAP.1", "UMAP.2", "TSNE.1" or "TSNE.2" for the 2D embeddings generated with rliger package. These are based on the nature of as.data.frame method on a DataFrame object.

Value

A ggplot object when a single plot is intended. A list of ggplot objects, when multiple colorBy variables and/or splitBy are set. When plotly = TRUE, all ggplot objects become plotly (htmlwidget) objects.

ggplot object when only one feature (e.g. cluster variable, gene, factor) is set. List object when multiple of those are specified.

Examples

```
plotDimRed(pbmcPlot, colorBy = "dataset", slot = "cellMeta",
           labelText = FALSE)
plotDimRed(pbmcPlot, colorBy = "S100A8", slot = "normData",
           dotOrder = "ascending", dotSize = 2)
plotDimRed(pbmcPlot, colorBy = 2, slot = "H.norm",
           dotOrder = "ascending", dotSize = 2, colorPalette = "viridis")
plotClusterDimRed(pbmcPlot)
plotDatasetDimRed(pbmcPlot)
plotByDatasetAndCluster(pbmcPlot)
plotGeneDimRed(pbmcPlot, varFeatures(pbmcPlot)[1])
plotFactorDimRed(pbmcPlot, 2)
```

---

plotEnhancedVolcano *Create volcano plot with EnhancedVolcano*

Description

Create volcano plot with EnhancedVolcano

Usage

```
plotEnhancedVolcano(result, group, ...)
```

Arguments

result	Data frame table returned by runMarkerDEG or runPairwiseDEG.
group	Selection of one group available from result$group. If only one group is available from result, default NULL uses it.
...	Arguments passed to EnhancedVolcano::EnhancedVolcano(), except that toptable, lab, x and y are prefilled by this wrapper.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("EnhancedVolcano", quietly = TRUE)) {
    defaultCluster(pbmc) <- pbmcPlot$leiden_cluster
    # Test the DEG between "stim" and "ctrl", within each cluster
    result <- runPairwiseDEG(
        pbmc,
        groupTest = "stim",
        groupCtrl = "ctrl",
        variable1 = "dataset",
        splitBy = "defaultCluster"
    )
    plotEnhancedVolcano(result, "0.stim")
}
```

---

plotGeneHeatmap *Plot Heatmap of Gene Expression or Factor Loading*

Description

Plot Heatmap of Gene Expression or Factor Loading

Usage

```
plotGeneHeatmap(
  object,
  features,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  slot = c("normData", "rawData", "scaleData", "scaleUnsharedData"),
  useCellMeta = NULL,
  cellAnnotation = NULL,
  featureAnnotation = NULL,
  cellSplitBy = NULL,
  featureSplitBy = NULL,
  viridisOption = "C",
  ...
)

plotFactorHeatmap(
  object,
  factors = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  slot = c("H.norm", "H"),
  useCellMeta = NULL,
```

```
  cellAnnotation = NULL,
  factorAnnotation = NULL,
  cellSplitBy = NULL,
  factorSplitBy = NULL,
  trim = c(0, 0.03),
  viridisOption = "D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object, with data to be plot available.
features, factors	Character vector of genes of interests or numeric index of factor to be involved. features is required, while factors is by default all the factors (reads object recorded k value in uns slot).
cellIdx	Valid index to subscribe cells to be included. See subsetLiger. Default NULL use all cells.
slot	Use the chosen matrix for heatmap. For plotGeneHeatmap, default "normData", alternatively "rawData", "scaleData" or "scaleUnsharedData". For plotFactorHeatmap, default "H.norm", alternatively "H".
useCellMeta	Character vector of available variable names in cellMeta, variables will be added as annotation to the heatmap. Default NULL.
cellAnnotation	data.frame object for using external annotation, with each column a variable and each row is a cell. Row names of this data.frame will be used for matching cells involved in heatmap. For cells not found in this data.frame, NAs will be added with warning. Default NULL.
featureAnnotation, factorAnnotation	Similar as cellAnnotation, while each row would be a gene or factor, respectively. Default NULL.
cellSplitBy	Character vector of variable names available in annotation given by useCellMeta and cellAnnotation. This slices the heatmap by specified variables. Default NULL.
featureSplitBy, factorSplitBy	Similar as cellSplitBy. Default NULL
viridisOption	See option argument of viridis. Default "C" (plasma) for plotGeneHeatmap and "D" (viridis) for plotFactorHeatmap.
...	Arguments passed on to .plotHeatmap transpose Logical, whether to "rotate" the heatmap by 90 degrees so that cell information is displayed by row. Default FALSE. showCellLabel, showFeatureLabel Logical, whether to show cell barcodes, gene symbols or factor names. Default TRUE for gene/factors but FALSE for cells. showCellLegend, showFeatureLegend Logical, whether to show cell or feature legends. Default TRUE. Can be a scalar for overall control or a vector matching with each given annotation variable.

`cellAnnColList,featureAnnColList` List object, with each element a named vector of R-interpretable color code. The names of the list elements are used for matching the annotation variable names. The names of the colors in the vectors are used for matching the levels of a variable (factor object, categorical). Default `NULL` generates ggplot-flavor categorical colors.

`scale` Logical, whether to take z-score to scale and center gene expression. Applied after `dataScaleFunc`. Default `FALSE`.

`baseSize` One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

`cellTextSize,featureTextSize,legendTextSize` Size of cell barcode labels, gene/factor labels, or legend values. Default `NULL`.

`cellTitleSize,featureTitleSize,legendTitleSize` Size of titles of the cell slices, gene/factor slices, or the legends. Default `NULL`.

`RColorBrewerOption` When `scale = TRUE`, heatmap color will be mapped with `brewer.pal`. This is passed to `name`. Default `"RdBu"`.

`trim` Numeric vector of two numbers. Higher value limits the maximum value and lower value limits the minimum value. Default `c(0, 0.03)`.

Value

`HeatmapList-class` object

Examples

```
plotGeneHeatmap(pbmcPlot, varFeatures(pbmcPlot))
plotGeneHeatmap(pbmcPlot, varFeatures(pbmcPlot),
                useCellMeta = c("leiden_cluster", "dataset"),
                cellSplitBy = "leiden_cluster")

plotFactorHeatmap(pbmcPlot)
plotFactorHeatmap(pbmcPlot, cellIdx = pbmcPlot$leiden_cluster %in% 1:3,
                  useCellMeta = c("leiden_cluster", "dataset"),
                  cellSplitBy = "leiden_cluster")
```

---

plotGeneLoadings *Visualize factor expression and gene loading*

Description

Visualize factor expression and gene loading

Usage

```
plotGeneLoadings(
  object,
  markerTable,
  useFactor,
  useDimRed = NULL,
  nLabel = 15,
  nPlot = 30,
  ...
)

plotGeneLoadingRank(
  object,
  markerTable,
  useFactor,
  nLabel = 15,
  nPlot = 30,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object with valid factorization result.
markerTable	Returned result of getFactorMarkers.
useFactor	Integer index for which factor to visualize.
useDimRed	Name of the variable storing dimensionality reduction result in the cellMeta slot. Default "UMAP".
nLabel	Integer, number of top genes to be shown with text labels. Default 15.
nPlot	Integer, number of top genes to be shown in the loading rank plot. Default 30.
...	Arguments passed on to plotDimRed, .ggScatter, .ggplotLigerTheme colorByFunc Default NULL. A function object that expects a vector/factor/data.frame retrieved by colorBy as the only input, and returns an object of the same size, so that the all color "aes" are replaced by this output. Useful when, for example, users need to scale the gene expression shown on plot. cellIdx Character, logical or numeric index that can subscribe cells. Missing or NULL for all cells. shapeBy Available variable name in cellMeta slot to look for categorical annotation to be reflected by dot shapes. Default NULL. titles Title text. A character scalar or a character vector with as many elements as multiple plots are supposed to be generated. Default NULL. dotSize,dotAlpha Numeric, controls the size or transparency of all dots. Default getOption("ligerDotSize") (1) and 0.9. trimHigh,trimLow Numeric, limit the largest or smallest value of continuous colorBy variable. Default NULL. raster Logical, whether to rasterize the plot. Default NULL automatically rasterize the plot when number of total dots to be plotted exceeds 100,000.

legendColorTitle Legend title text for color aesthetics, often used for categorical or continuous coloring of dots. Default NULL shows the original variable name.

legendShapeTitle Legend title text for shape aesthetics, often used for shaping dots by categorical variable. Default NULL shows the original variable name.

showLegend Whether to show the legend. Default TRUE.

legendPosition Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from "top", "bottom", "left" or "right". Default "right".

baseSize One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

titleSize,xTitleSize,yTitleSize,legendTitleSize Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default NULL controls by baseSize + 2.

subtitleSize,xTextSize,yTextSize,legendTextSize Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default NULL controls by baseSize.

panelBorder Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default FALSE.

colorPalette For continuous coloring, an index or a palette name to select from available options from ggplot scale_brewer or viridis. Default "magma".

colorDirection Choose 1 or -1. Applied when colorPalette is from Viridis options. Default -1 use darker color for higher value, while 1 reverses this direction.

naColor The color code for NA values. Default "#DEDEDE". scale_colour_gradient2. Default NULL.

Examples

```
result <- getFactorMarkers(pbmcPlot, "ctrl", "stim")
plotGeneLoadings(pbmcPlot, result, useFactor = 2)
```

---

plotGeneViolin *Visualize gene expression or cell metadata with violin plot*

Description

Visualize gene expression or cell metadata with violin plot

Usage

```
plotGeneViolin(object, gene, byDataset = TRUE, groupBy = NULL, ...)

plotTotalCountViolin(object, groupBy = "dataset", ...)

plotGeneDetectedViolin(object, groupBy = "dataset", ...)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object.
gene	Character gene names.
byDataset	Logical, whether the violin plot should be splitted by dataset. Default TRUE.
groupBy	Names of available categorical variable in cellMeta slot. Use FALSE for no grouping. Default NULL looks clustering result but will not group if no clustering found.
...	Arguments passed on to plotCellViolin, .ggCellViolin, .ggplotLigerTheme slot Choose the slot to find the y variable. See Details. Default "cellMeta". yFunc A function object that expects a vector/factor/data.frame retrieved by y as the only input, and returns an object of the same size, so that the y-axis is replaced by this output. Useful when, for example, users need to scale the gene expression shown on plot. cellIdx Character, logical or numeric index that can subscribe cells. Missing or NULL for all cells. titles Title text. A character scalar or a character vector with as many elements as multiple plots are supposed to be generated. Default NULL. violin,box,dot Logical, whether to add violin plot, box plot or dot (scatter) plot, respectively. Layers are added in the order of dot, violin, and violin on the top surface. By default, only violin plot is generated. violinAlpha,boxAlpha Numeric, controls the transparency of layers. Default 0.8, 0.6, respectively. violinWidth,boxWidth Numeric, controls the width of violin/box bounding box. Default 0.9 and 0.4. dotColor,dotSize Numeric, globally controls the appearance of all dots. Default "black" and getOption("ligerDotSize") (1). xlabAngle Numeric, counter-clockwise rotation angle of X axis label text. Default 45. raster Logical, whether to rasterize the dot plot. Default NULL automatically rasterizes the dot plot when number of total cells to be plotted exceeds 100,000. seed Random seed for reproducibility. Default 1. legendFillTitle Legend title text for fill aesthetics, often used for violin, box, bar plots. Default NULL shows the original variable name. showLegend Whether to show the legend. Default TRUE. legendPosition Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from "top", "bottom", "left" or "right". Default "right". baseSize One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this. titleSize,xTitleSize,yTitleSize,legendTitleSize Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default NULL controls by baseSize + 2. subtitleSize,xTextSize,yTextSize,legendTextSize Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default NULL controls by baseSize.

panelBorder Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default FALSE.

colorLabels Character vector for modifying category names in a color legend. Passed to ggplot2::scale_color_manual(labels). Default NULL uses original levels of the factor.

colorValues Character vector of colors for modifying category colors in a color legend. Passed to ggplot2::scale_color_manual(values). Default NULL uses internal selected palette when <= 26 categories are presented, otherwise ggplot hues.

legendNRow,legendNCol Integer, when too many categories in one variable, arranges number of rows or columns. Default NULL, automatically split to ceiling(levels(variable)/15) columns.

plotly Whether to use plotly to enable web based interactive browsing for the plot. Requires installation of package "plotly". Default FALSE.

Value

ggplot if using a single gene and not splitting by dataset. Otherwise, list of ggplot.

Examples

```
plotGeneViolin(pbmcPlot, varFeatures(pbmcPlot)[1],
               groupBy = "leiden_cluster")
plotTotalCountViolin(pbmc)
plotGeneDetectedViolin(pbmc, dot = TRUE, box = TRUE, colorBy = "dataset")
```

---

plotGODot *Visualize GO enrichment test result in dot plot*

Description

Visualize GO enrichment test result in dot plot

Usage

```
plotGODot(
  result,
  group = NULL,
  query = NULL,
  pvalThresh = 0.05,
  n = 20,
  minDotSize = 3,
  maxDotSize = 7,
  termIDMatch = "^GO",
  colorPalette = "E",
  colorDirection = -1,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

result	Returned list object from runGOEnrich.
group	A single group name to be visualized, must be available in names(result). Default NULL make plots for the first group.
query	A single string selecting from which query to show the result. Choose from "Up" for results using up-regulated genes, "Down" for down-regulated genes. Default NULL use the first available.
pvalThresh	Numeric scalar, cutoff for p-value where smaller values are considered as significant. Default 0.05.
n	Number of top terms to be shown, ranked by p-value. Default 20.
minDotSize	The size of the dot representing the minimum gene count. Default 3.
maxDotSize	The size of the dot representing the maximum gene count.
termIDMatch	Regular expression pattern to match the term ID. Default "^GO" for only using GO terms from returned results.
colorPalette, colorDirection	Viridis palette options. Default "E" and 1.
...	Arguments passed on to .ggplotLigerTheme legendColorTitle Legend title text for color aesthetics, often used for categorical or continuous coloring of dots. Default NULL shows the original variable name. legendSizeTitle Legend title text for size aesthetics, often used for sizing dots by continuous variable. Default NULL shows the original variable name. showLegend Whether to show the legend. Default TRUE. legendPosition Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from "top", "bottom", "left" or "right". Default "right". baseSize One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this. titleSize,xTitleSize,yTitleSize,legendTitleSize Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default NULL controls by baseSize + 2. subtitleSize,xTextSize,yTextSize,legendTextSize Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default NULL controls by baseSize. plotly Whether to use plotly to enable web based interactive browsing for the plot. Requires installation of package "plotly". Default FALSE.

Value

A ggplot object.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("gprofiler2", quietly = TRUE)) {
   go <- runGOEnrich(deg.pw)
   plotGODot(go)
}
```

plotGroupClusterDimRed *Comprehensive group splited cluster plot on dimension reduction with proportion*

Description

This function produces combined plot on group level (e.g. dataset, other metadata variable like biological conditions). Scatter plot of dimension reduction with cluster labeled is generated per group. Furthermore, a stacked barplot of cluster proportion within each group is also combined with the subplot of each group.

Usage

```
plotGroupClusterDimRed(
  object,
  useGroup = "dataset",
  useCluster = NULL,
  useDimRed = NULL,
  combinePlot = TRUE,
  droplevels = TRUE,
  relHeightMainLegend = c(5, 1),
  relHeightDRBar = c(10, 1),
  mainNRow = NULL,
  mainNCol = NULL,
  legendNRow = 1,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object with dimension reduction, grouping variable and cluster assignment in `cellMeta(object)`.
useGroup	Variable name of the group division in metadata. Default `"dataset"`.
useCluster	Name of variable in `cellMeta(object)`. Default `NULL` uses default cluster.
useDimRed	Name of the variable storing dimensionality reduction result in `cellMeta(object)`. Default `NULL` use default dimRed.
combinePlot	Whether to return combined plot. Default `TRUE`. If `FALSE`, will return a list containing only the scatter plots.
droplevels	Logical, whether to perform `droplevels()` on the selected grouping variable. Default `TRUE` will not show groups that are listed as categories but do not indeed have any cells.
relHeightMainLegend	Relative heights of the main combination panel and the legend at the bottom. Must be a numeric vector of 2 numbers. Default `c(5, 1)`.

relHeightDRBar Relative heights of the scatter plot and the barplot within each subpanel. Must be a numeric vector of 2 numbers. Default c(10, 1).

mainNRow, mainNCol
Arrangement of the main plotting region, for number of rows and columns. Default NULL will be automatically handled by plot_grid.

legendNRow Arrangement of the legend, number of rows. Default 1.

... Arguments passed on to .ggScatter, .ggplotLigerTheme

dotOrder Controls the order that each dot is added to the plot. Choose from "shuffle", "ascending", or "descending". Default "shuffle", useful when coloring by categories that overlaps (e.g. "dataset"), "ascending" can be useful when coloring by a continuous variable (e.g. gene expression) where high values needs more highlight. NULL use default order.

dotSize,dotAlpha Numeric, controls the size or transparency of all dots. Default getOption("ligerDotSize") (1) and 0.9.

raster Logical, whether to rasterize the plot. Default NULL automatically rasterize the plot when number of total dots to be plotted exceeds 100,000.

labelText Logical, whether to show text label at the median position of each categorical group specified by colorBy. Default TRUE. Does not work when continuous coloring is specified.

labelTextSize Numeric, controls the size of label size when labelText = TRUE. Default 4.

seed Random seed for reproducibility. Default 1.

baseSize One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

panelBorder Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default FALSE.

colorValues Character vector of colors for modifying category colors in a color legend. Passed to ggplot2::scale_color_manual(values). Default NULL uses internal selected palette when <= 26 categories are presented, otherwise ggplot hues.

naColor The color code for NA values. Default "#DEDEDE". scale_colour_gradient2. Default NULL.

plotly Whether to use plotly to enable web based interactive browsing for the plot. Requires installation of package "plotly". Default FALSE.

Value

ggplot object when only one feature (e.g. cluster variable, gene, factor) is set. List object when multiple of those are specified.

Examples

```
plotGroupClusterDimRed(pbmcPlot)
```

plotMarkerHeatmap *Create heatmap for showing top marker expression in conditions*

Description

Create heatmap for showing top marker expression in conditions

Usage

```
plotMarkerHeatmap(
  object,
  result,
  topN = 5,
  lfcThresh = 1,
  padjThresh = 0.05,
  pctInThresh = 50,
  pctOutThresh = 50,
  dedupBy = c("logFC", "padj"),
  groupBy = NULL,
  groupSize = 50,
  column_title = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object, with normalized data and metadata to annotate available.
result	The data.frame returned by runMarkerDEG.
topN	Number of top features to be plot for each group. Default 5.
lfcThresh	Hard threshold on logFC value. Default 1.
padjThresh	Hard threshold on adjusted P-value. Default 0.05.
pctInThresh, pctOutThresh	Threshold on expression percentage. These mean that a feature will only pass the filter if it is expressed in more than pctInThresh percent of cells in the corresponding cluster. Similarly for pctOutThresh. Only applied when these metrics are available. Default 50 percent for both.
dedupBy	When ranking by padj and logFC and a feature is ranked as top for multiple clusters, assign this feature as the marker of a cluster when it has the largest "logFC" in the cluster or has the lowest "padj". Default "logFC".
groupBy	Cell metadata variable names for cell grouping. Downsample balancing will also be aware of this. Default "dataset" and the default cluster.
groupSize	Maximum number of cells in each group to be downsampled for plotting. Default 50.
column_title	Title on the column. Default NULL.

... Arguments passed on to plotGeneHeatmap, .plotHeatmap

cellAnnotation data.frame object for using external annotation, with each column a variable and each row is a cell. Row names of this data.frame will be used for matching cells involved in heatmap. For cells not found in this data.frame, NAs will be added with warning. Default NULL.

transpose Logical, whether to "rotate" the heatmap by 90 degrees so that cell information is displayed by row. Default FALSE.

showCellLabel,showFeatureLabel Logical, whether to show cell barcodes, gene symbols or factor names. Default TRUE for gene/factors but FALSE for cells.

cellAnnColList,featureAnnColList List object, with each element a named vector of R-interpretable color code. The names of the list elements are used for matching the annotation variable names. The names of the colors in the vectors are used for matching the levels of a variable (factor object, categorical). Default NULL generates ggplot-flavor categorical colors.

scale Logical, whether to take z-score to scale and center gene expression. Applied after dataScaleFunc. Default FALSE.

trim Numeric vector of two values. Limit the z-score value into this range when scale = TRUE. Default c(-2, 2).

baseSize One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

cellTextSize,featureTextSize,legendTextSize Size of cell barcode labels, gene/factor labels, or legend values. Default NULL.

cellTitleSize,featureTitleSize,legendTitleSize Size of titles of the cell slices, gene/factor slices, or the legends. Default NULL.

viridisOption,viridisDirection See argument option and direction of viridis. Default "A" and -1.

RColorBrewerOption When scale = TRUE, heatmap color will be mapped with brewer.pal. This is passed to name. Default "RdBu".

Value

A HeatmapList-class object.

Examples

```
defaultCluster(pbmc) <- pbmcPlot$leiden_cluster
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
plotMarkerHeatmap(pbmc, deg.marker)
```

plotPairwiseDEGHeatmap *Create heatmap for pairwise DEG analysis result*

Description

Create heatmap for pairwise DEG analysis result

Usage

```
plotPairwiseDEGHeatmap(
  object,
  result,
  group = NULL,
  topN = 20,
  absLFCThresh = 1,
  padjThresh = 0.05,
  pctInThresh = 50,
  pctOutThresh = 50,
  downsampleSize = 200,
  useCellMeta = NULL,
  column_title = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object, with normalized data and metadata to annotate available.
result	The data.frame returned by runPairwiseDEG.
group	The test group name among the result to be shown. Must specify only one if multiple tests are available (i.e. split test). Default NULL works with single-test result and raises error with split-test result.
topN	Maximum number of top significant features to be plot for up- and down-regulated genes. Default 20.
absLFCThresh	Hard threshold on absolute logFC value. Default 1.
padjThresh	Hard threshold on adjusted P-value. Default 0.05.
pctInThresh, pctOutThresh	Threshold on expression percentage. These mean that a feature will only pass the filter if it is expressed in more than pctInThresh percent of cells in the corresponding cluster. Similarly for pctOutThresh. Only applied when these metrics are available. Default 50 percent for both.
downsampleSize	Maximum number of downsampled cells to be shown in the heatmap. The downsampling is balanced on the cells involved in the test specified. Default 200.

`useCellMeta` Cell metadata variable names for cell grouping. Default `NULL` includes dataset source and the default cluster.

`column_title` Title on the column. Default `NULL`.

`seed` Random seed for reproducibility. Default `1`.

`...` Arguments passed on to `.plotHeatmap`

`transpose` Logical, whether to "rotate" the heatmap by 90 degrees so that cell information is displayed by row. Default `FALSE`.

`showCellLabel,showFeatureLabel` Logical, whether to show cell barcodes, gene symbols or factor names. Default `TRUE` for gene/factors but `FALSE` for cells.

`cellAnnColList,featureAnnColList` List object, with each element a named vector of R-interpretable color code. The names of the list elements are used for matching the annotation variable names. The names of the colors in the vectors are used for matching the levels of a variable (factor object, categorical). Default `NULL` generates ggplot-flavor categorical colors.

`scale` Logical, whether to take z-score to scale and center gene expression. Applied after `dataScaleFunc`. Default `FALSE`.

`trim` Numeric vector of two values. Limit the z-score value into this range when `scale = TRUE`. Default `c(-2, 2)`.

`baseSize` One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

`cellTextSize,featureTextSize,legendTextSize` Size of cell barcode labels, gene/factor labels, or legend values. Default `NULL`.

`cellTitleSize,featureTitleSize,legendTitleSize` Size of titles of the cell slices, gene/factor slices, or the legends. Default `NULL`.

`viridisOption,viridisDirection` See argument `option` and `direction` of `viridis`. Default `"A"` and `-1`.

`RColorBrewerOption` When `scale = TRUE`, heatmap color will be mapped with `brewer.pal`. This is passed to `name`. Default `"RdBu"`.

Value

A HeatmapList-class object.

Examples

```
defaultCluster(pbmc) <- pbmcPlot$leiden_cluster
pbmc$condition_cluster <- interaction(pbmc$dataset, pbmc$defaultCluster)
deg <- runPairwiseDEG(pbmc, 'stim.0', 'stim.1', 'condition_cluster')
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
plotPairwiseDEGHeatmap(pbmc, deg, 'stim.0')
```

plotProportion *Visualize proportion across two categorical variables*

Description

plotProportionBar creates bar plots comparing the cross-category proportion. plotProportionDot creates dot plots. plotClusterProportions has variable pre-specified and calls the dot plot. plotProportion produces a combination of both bar plots and dot plot.

Having package "ggrepel" installed can help adding tidier percentage annotation on the pie chart. Run options(ggrepel.max.overlaps = n) before plotting to set allowed label overlaps.

Usage

```
plotProportion(
  object,
  class1 = NULL,
  class2 = "dataset",
  method = c("stack", "group", "pie"),
  ...
)

plotProportionDot(
  object,
  class1 = NULL,
  class2 = "dataset",
  showLegend = FALSE,
  panelBorder = TRUE,
  ...
)

plotProportionBar(
  object,
  class1 = NULL,
  class2 = "dataset",
  method = c("stack", "group"),
  inclRev = FALSE,
  panelBorder = TRUE,
  combinePlot = TRUE,
  ...
)

plotClusterProportions(object, useCluster = NULL, return.plot = FALSE, ...)

plotProportionPie(
  object,
  class1 = NULL,
```

```
  class2 = "dataset",
  labelSize = 4,
  labelColor = "black",
  circleColors = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object.
class1, class2	Each should be a single name of a categorical variable available in cellMeta slot. Number of cells in each categories in class2 will be served as the denominator when calculating proportions. By default class1 = NULL and uses default clusters and class2 = "dataset".
method	For bar plot, choose whether to draw "stack" or "group" bar plot. Default "stack".
...	Arguments passed on to .ggplotLigerTheme

title,subtitle,xlab,ylab Main title, subtitle or X/Y axis title text. By default, no main title or subtitle will be set, and X/Y axis title will be the names of variables used for plotting. Use NULL to hide elements. TRUE for xlab or ylab shows default values.

legendFillTitle Legend title text for fill aesthetics, often used for violin, box, bar plots. Default NULL shows the original variable name.

legendPosition Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from "top", "bottom", "left" or "right". Default "right".

baseSize One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

titleSize,xTitleSize,yTitleSize,legendTitleSize Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default NULL controls by baseSize + 2.

subtitleSize,xTextSize,yTextSize,legendTextSize Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default NULL controls by baseSize.

colorLabels Character vector for modifying category names in a color legend. Passed to ggplot2::scale_color_manual(labels). Default NULL uses original levels of the factor.

colorValues Character vector of colors for modifying category colors in a color legend. Passed to ggplot2::scale_color_manual(values). Default NULL uses internal selected palette when <= 26 categories are presented, otherwise ggplot hues.

legendNRow,legendNCol Integer, when too many categories in one variable, arranges number of rows or columns. Default NULL, automatically split to ceiling(levels(variable)/15) columns.

colorPalette For continuous coloring, an index or a palette name to select from available options from ggplot scale_brewer or viridis. Default "magma".

colorDirection Choose 1 or -1. Applied when colorPalette is from Viridis options. Default -1 use darker color for higher value, while 1 reverses this direction.

colorLow,colorMid,colorHigh,colorMidPoint All four of these must be specified to customize palette with

naColor The color code for NA values. Default "#DEDEDE". scale_colour_gradient2. Default NULL.

plotly Whether to use plotly to enable web based interactive browsing for the plot. Requires installation of package "plotly". Default FALSE.

showLegend Whether to show the legend. Default TRUE.

panelBorder Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default FALSE.

inclRev Logical, for barplot, whether to reverse the specification for class1 and class2 and produce two plots. Default FALSE.

combinePlot Logical, whether to combine the two plots with plot_grid when two plots are created. Default TRUE.

useCluster For plotClusterProportions. Same as class1 while class2 is hardcoded with "dataset".

return.plot **[Defunct]**

labelSize, labelColor

Settings on pie chart percentage label. Default 4 and "white".

circleColors Character vector of colors. plotProportionPie parameter for setting the colors of circles, i.e. categorical variable controlled by class2. Default NULL uses ggplot default hues.

Value

ggplot or list of ggplot

Examples

```
plotProportion(pbmcPlot)
plotProportionBar(pbmcPlot, method = "group")
plotProportionPie(pbmcPlot)
```

---

plotProportionBox *Box plot of cluster proportion in each dataset, grouped by condition*

Description

This function calculate the proportion of each category (e.g. cluster, cell type) within each dataset, and then make box plot grouped by condition. The proportion of all categories within one dataset sums up to 1. The condition variable must be a variable of dataset, i.e. each dataset must belong to only one condition.

Usage

```
plotProportionBox(
  object,
  useCluster = NULL,
  conditionBy = NULL,
  sampleBy = "dataset",
  splitByCluster = FALSE,
  dot = FALSE,
  dotSize = getOption("ligerDotSize", 1),
  dotJitter = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object.
useCluster	Name of variable in cellMeta(object). Default NULL uses default cluster.
conditionBy	Name of the variable in cellMeta(object) that represents the condition. Must be a high level variable of the sampleBy variable, i.e. each sample must belong to only one condition. Default NULL does not group samples by condition.
sampleBy	Name of the variable in cellMeta(object) that represents individual samples. Default "dataset".
splitByCluster	Logical, whether to split the wide grouped box plot by cluster, into a list of boxplots for each cluster. Default FALSE.
dot	Logical, whether to add dot plot on top of the box plot. Default FALSE.
dotSize	Size of the dot. Default uses user option "ligerDotSize", or 1 if not set.
dotJitter	Logical, whether to jitter the dot to avoid overlapping within a box when many dots are presented. Default FALSE.
...	Arguments passed on to .ggplotLigerTheme title,subtitle,xlab,ylab Main title, subtitle or X/Y axis title text. By default, no main title or subtitle will be set, and X/Y axis title will be the names of variables used for plotting. Use NULL to hide elements. TRUE for xlab or ylab shows default values. legendFillTitle Legend title text for fill aesthetics, often used for violin, box, bar plots. Default NULL shows the original variable name. showLegend Whether to show the legend. Default TRUE. legendPosition Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from "top", "bottom", "left" or "right". Default "right". baseSize One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this. titleSize,xTitleSize,yTitleSize,legendTitleSize Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default NULL controls by baseSize + 2. subtitleSize,xTextSize,yTextSize,legendTextSize Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default NULL controls by baseSize.

`panelBorder` Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default `FALSE`.

`colorLabels` Character vector for modifying category names in a color legend. Passed to `ggplot2::scale_color_manual(labels)`. Default `NULL` uses original levels of the factor.

`colorValues` Character vector of colors for modifying category colors in a color legend. Passed to `ggplot2::scale_color_manual(values)`. Default `NULL` uses internal selected palette when <= 26 categories are presented, otherwise ggplot hues.

`legendNRow,legendNCol` Integer, when too many categories in one variable, arranges number of rows or columns. Default `NULL`, automatically split to `ceiling(levels(variable)/15)` columns.

`colorPalette` For continuous coloring, an index or a palette name to select from available options from ggplot `scale_brewer` or `viridis`. Default `"magma"`.

`colorDirection` Choose `1` or `-1`. Applied when `colorPalette` is from Viridis options. Default `-1` use darker color for higher value, while `1` reverses this direction.

`colorLow,colorMid,colorHigh,colorMidPoint` All four of these must be specified to customize palette with

`naColor` The color code for `NA` values. Default `"#DEDEDE"`. `scale_colour_gradient2`. Default `NULL`.

`plotly` Whether to use plotly to enable web based interactive browsing for the plot. Requires installation of package "plotly". Default `FALSE`.

Value

A ggplot object or a list of ggplot objects if `splitByCluster = TRUE`.

Examples

```
# "boxes" are expected to appear as horizontal lines, because there's no
# "condition" variable that groups the datasets in the example object, and
# thus only one value exists for each "box".
plotProportionBox(pbmcPlot, conditionBy = "dataset")
```

---

plotSankey *Make Riverplot/Sankey diagram that shows label mapping across datasets*

Description

Creates a riverplot/Sankey diagram to show how independent cluster assignments from two datasets map onto a joint clustering. Prior knowledge of cell annotation for the given datasets is required to make sense from the visualization. Dataset original annotation can be added with the syntax shown in example code in this manual. The joint clustering could be generated with `runCluster` or set by any other metadata annotation.

Dataset original annotation can be inserted before running this function using `cellMeta<-` method. Please see example below.

This function depends on CRAN available package "sankey" and it has to be installed in order to make this function work.

Usage

```
plotSankey(
  object,
  cluster1,
  cluster2,
  clusterConsensus = NULL,
  minFrac = 0.01,
  minCell = 10,
  titles = NULL,
  prefixes = NULL,
  labelCex = 1,
  titleCex = 1.1,
  colorValues = scPalette,
  mar = c(2, 2, 4, 2)
)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object with all three clustering variables available.
`cluster1, cluster2`	Name of the variables in `cellMeta(object)` for the cluster assignments of dataset 1 and 2, respectively.
`clusterConsensus`	Name of the joint cluster variable to use. Default uses the default clustering of the object. Can select a variable name in `cellMeta(object)`.
`minFrac`	Numeric. Minimum fraction of cluster for an edge to be shown. Default `0.05`.
`minCell`	Numeric. Minimum number of cells for an edge to be shown. Default `10`.
`titles`	Character vector of three. Customizes the column title text shown. Default uses the variable names `cluster1`, `clusterConsensus` and `cluster2`.
`prefixes`	Character vector of three. Cluster names have to be unique across all three variables, so this is provided to deduplicate the clusters by adding `"prefixes[i]-"` before the actual label. This will not be applied when no duplicate is found. Default `NULL` uses variable names. An NA value or a string with no character (i.e. `""`) does not add the prefix to the corresponding variable.
`labelCex`	Numeric. Amount by which node label text should be magnified relative to the default. Default `1`.
`titleCex`	Numeric. Amount by which node label text should be magnified relative to the default. Default `1.1`.
`colorValues`	Character vector of color codes to set color for each level in the consensus clustering. Default `scPalette`.

mar — Numeric vector of the form c(bottom, left, top, right) which gives the number of lines of margin to be specified on the four sides of the plot. Increasing the 2nd and 4th values can be helpful when cluster labels are long and extend out side of the plotting region. Default c(2, 2, 4, 2).

Value

No returned value. The sankey diagram will be displayed instead.

Note

This function works as a replacement of the function makeRiverplot in rliger <1.99. We decide to make a new function because the dependency adopted by the older version is archived on CRAN and will be no longer available.

Examples

```
# Make fake dataset specific labels from joint clustering result
cellMeta(pbmcPlot, "ctrl_cluster", "ctrl") <-
    cellMeta(pbmcPlot, "leiden_cluster", "ctrl")
cellMeta(pbmcPlot, "stim_cluster", "stim") <-
    cellMeta(pbmcPlot, "leiden_cluster", "stim")
if (requireNamespace("sankey", quietly = TRUE)) {
    plotSankey(pbmcPlot, "ctrl_cluster", "stim_cluster",
               titles = c("control", "LIGER", "stim"),
               prefixes = c("c", NA, "s"))
}
```

---

plotSpatial2D *Visualize a spatial dataset*

Description

Simple visualization of spatial coordinates. See example code for how to have information preset in the object. Arguments to the liger object method are passed down to ligerDataset method.

Usage

```
plotSpatial2D(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
plotSpatial2D(object, dataset, useCluster = NULL, legendColorTitle = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class 'ligerSpatialDataset'
plotSpatial2D(
  object,
  useCluster = NULL,
  legendColorTitle = NULL,
```

```
  useDims = c(1, 2),
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  labelText = FALSE,
  panelBorder = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`object`	Either a liger object containing a spatial dataset or a ligerSpatialDataset object.
`...`	Arguments passed on to `.ggScatter`, `.ggplotLigerTheme` `dotOrder` Controls the order that each dot is added to the plot. Choose from `"shuffle"`, `"ascending"`, or `"descending"`. Default `"shuffle"`, useful when coloring by categories that overlaps (e.g. "dataset"), `"ascending"` can be useful when coloring by a continuous variable (e.g. gene expression) where high values needs more highlight. `NULL` use default order. `dotSize,dotAlpha` Numeric, controls the size or transparency of all dots. Default `getOption("ligerDotSize")` (1) and `0.9`. `raster` Logical, whether to rasterize the plot. Default `NULL` automatically rasterize the plot when number of total dots to be plotted exceeds 100,000. `labelTextSize` Numeric, controls the size of label size when `labelText = TRUE`. Default 4. `seed` Random seed for reproducibility. Default 1. `showLegend` Whether to show the legend. Default `TRUE`. `legendPosition` Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from `"top"`, `"bottom"`, `"left"` or `"right"`. Default `"right"`. `baseSize` One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this. `titleSize,xTitleSize,yTitleSize,legendTitleSize` Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default `NULL` controls by `baseSize + 2`. `subtitleSize,xTextSize,yTextSize,legendTextSize` Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default `NULL` controls by `baseSize`. `legendDotSize` Allow dots in legend region to be large enough to see the colors/shapes clearly. Default 4. `colorLabels` Character vector for modifying category names in a color legend. Passed to `ggplot2::scale_color_manual(labels)`. Default `NULL` uses original levels of the factor. `colorValues` Character vector of colors for modifying category colors in a color legend. Passed to `ggplot2::scale_color_manual(values)`. Default `NULL` uses internal selected palette when <= 26 categories are presented, otherwise ggplot hues. `legendNRow,legendNCol` Integer, when too many categories in one variable, arranges number of rows or columns. Default `NULL`, automatically split to `ceiling(levels(variable)/15)` columns.

naColor The color code for NA values. Default "#DEDEDE". scale_colour_gradient2. Default NULL.

dataset Name of one spatial dataset.

useCluster Either the name of one variable in cellMeta(object) or a factor object with annotation that matches with all cells in the specified dataset. Default NULL uses default clusters.

legendColorTitle
Alternative title text in the legend. Default NULL uses the variable name set by useCluster, or "Annotation" is useCluster is a customized factor object.

useDims Numeric vector of two, choosing the coordinates to be drawn on 2D space. (STARmap data could have 3 dimensions.) Default c(1, 2).

xlab, ylab Text label on x-/y-axis. Default NULL does not show it.

labelText Logical, whether to label annotation onto the scatter plot. Default FALSE.

panelBorder Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default TRUE.

Value

A ggplot object

Examples

```
ctrl.fake.spatial <- as.ligerDataset(dataset(pbmc, "ctrl"), modal = "spatial")
fake.coords <- matrix(rnorm(2 * ncol(ctrl.fake.spatial)), ncol = 2)
coordinate(ctrl.fake.spatial) <- fake.coords
dataset(pbmc, "ctrl") <- ctrl.fake.spatial
defaultCluster(pbmc) <- pbmcPlot$leiden_cluster
plotSpatial2D(pbmc, dataset = "ctrl")
```

---

plotVarFeatures *Plot the variance vs mean of feature expression*

Description

For each dataset where the feature variablitity is calculated, a plot of log10 feature expression variance and log10 mean will be produced. Features that are considered as variable would be highlighted in red.

Usage

```
plotVarFeatures(object, combinePlot = TRUE, dotSize = 1, ...)
```

Arguments

object	liger object. selectGenes needs to be run in advance.
combinePlot	Logical. If TRUE, sub-figures for all datasets will be combined into one plot. if FALSE, a list of plots will be returned. Default TRUE.
dotSize	Controls the size of dots in the main plot. Default 0.8.
...	More theme setting parameters passed to .ggplotLigerTheme.

Value

ggplot object when combinePlot = TRUE, a list of ggplot objects when combinePlot = FALSE

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc)
plotVarFeatures(pbmc)
```

---

plotVolcano *Create volcano plot for Wilcoxon test result*

Description

plotVolcano is a simple implementation and shares most of arguments with other rliger plotting functions. plotEnhancedVolcano is a wrapper function of EnhancedVolcano::EnhancedVolcano(), which has provides substantial amount of arguments for graphical control. However, that requires the installation of package "EnhancedVolcano".

highlight and labelTopN both controls the feature name labeling, whereas highlight is considered first. If both are as default (NULL), all significant features will be labeled.

Usage

```
plotVolcano(
  result,
  group = NULL,
  logFCThresh = 1,
  padjThresh = 0.01,
  highlight = NULL,
  labelTopN = NULL,
  dotSize = 2,
  dotAlpha = 0.8,
  legendPosition = "top",
  labelSize = 4,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

result	Data frame table returned by runMarkerDEG or runPairwiseDEG.
group	Selection of one group available from result$group. If only one group is available from result, default NULL uses it.
logFCThresh	Number for the threshold on the absolute value of the log2 fold change statistics. Default 1.
padjThresh	Number for the threshold on the adjusted p-value statistics. Default 0.01.
highlight	A character vector of feature names to be highlighted. Default NULL.
labelTopN	Number of top differential expressed features to be labeled on the top of the dots. Ranked by adjusted p-value first and absolute value of logFC next. Default NULL.
dotSize, dotAlpha	Numbers for universal aesthetics control of dots. Default 2 and 0.8.
legendPosition	Text indicating where to place the legend. Choose from "top", "bottom", "left" or "right". Default "top".
labelSize	Size of labeled top features and line annotations. Default 4.
...	Arguments passed on to .ggScatter, .ggplotLigerTheme

dotOrder Controls the order that each dot is added to the plot. Choose from "shuffle", "ascending", or "descending". Default "shuffle", useful when coloring by categories that overlaps (e.g. "dataset"), "ascending" can be useful when coloring by a continuous variable (e.g. gene expression) where high values needs more highlight. NULL use default order.

raster Logical, whether to rasterize the plot. Default NULL automatically rasterize the plot when number of total dots to be plotted exceeds 100,000.

labelText Logical, whether to show text label at the median position of each categorical group specified by colorBy. Default TRUE. Does not work when continuous coloring is specified.

labelTextSize Numeric, controls the size of label size when labelText = TRUE. Default 4.

seed Random seed for reproducibility. Default 1.

legendColorTitle Legend title text for color aesthetics, often used for categorical or continuous coloring of dots. Default NULL shows the original variable name.

showLegend Whether to show the legend. Default TRUE.

baseSize One-parameter control of all text sizes. Individual text element sizes can be controlled by other size arguments. "Title" sizes are 2 points larger than "text" sizes when being controlled by this.

titleSize,xTitleSize,yTitleSize,legendTitleSize Size of main title, axis titles and legend title. Default NULL controls by baseSize + 2.

subtitleSize,xTextSize,yTextSize,legendTextSize Size of subtitle text, axis texts and legend text. Default NULL controls by baseSize.

panelBorder Whether to show rectangle border of the panel instead of using ggplot classic bottom and left axis lines. Default FALSE.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotVolcano(deg.pw, "stim.CD14 Mono")
```

`print.factorGSEA` *Show information about factorGSEA object*

Description

Show information about factorGSEA object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'factorGSEA'
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

`x`	A `factorGSEA` object.
`...`	S3 method convention, not used for now.

`quantile_norm-deprecated`

[Superseded] *Quantile align (normalize) factor loading*

Description

Please turn to `quantileNorm`.

This process builds a shared factor neighborhood graph to jointly cluster cells, then quantile normalizes corresponding clusters.

The first step, building the shared factor neighborhood graph, is performed in SNF(), and produces a graph representation where edge weights between cells (across all datasets) correspond to their similarity in the shared factor neighborhood space. An important parameter here is knn_k, the number of neighbors used to build the shared factor space.

Next we perform quantile alignment for each dataset, factor, and cluster (by stretching/compressing datasets' quantiles to better match those of the reference dataset). These aligned factor loadings are combined into a single matrix and returned as H.norm.

Arguments

object	liger object. Should run optimizeALS before calling.
knn_k	Number of nearest neighbors for within-dataset knn graph (default 20).
ref_dataset	Name of dataset to use as a "reference" for normalization. By default, the dataset with the largest number of cells is used.
min_cells	Minimum number of cells to consider a cluster shared across datasets (default 20)
quantiles	Number of quantiles to use for quantile normalization (default 50).
eps	The error bound of the nearest neighbor search. (default 0.9) Lower values give more accurate nearest neighbor graphs but take much longer to computer.
dims.use	Indices of factors to use for shared nearest factor determination (default 1:ncol(H[[1]])).
do.center	Centers the data when scaling factors (useful for less sparse modalities like methylation data). (default FALSE)
max_sample	Maximum number of cells used for quantile normalization of each cluster and factor. (default 1000)
refine.knn	whether to increase robustness of cluster assignments using KNN graph.(default TRUE)
rand.seed	Random seed to allow reproducible results (default 1)

Value

liger object with 'H.norm' and 'clusters' slot set.

See Also

rliger-deprecated

---

quantileAlignSNF **[Superseded]** *Quantile align (normalize) factor loadings*

Description

This is a deprecated function. Calling 'quantileNorm' instead.

Usage

```
quantileAlignSNF(
  object,
  knn_k = 20,
  k2 = 500,
  prune.thresh = 0.2,
  ref_dataset = NULL,
  min_cells = 20,
  quantiles = 50,
```

```
  nstart = 10,
  resolution = 1,
  dims.use = 1:ncol(x = object@H[[1]]),
  dist.use = "CR",
  center = FALSE,
  small.clust.thresh = 0,
  id.number = NULL,
  print.mod = FALSE,
  print.align.summary = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object. Should run optimizeALS before calling.
knn_k	Number of nearest neighbors for within-dataset knn graph (default 20).
k2	Horizon parameter for shared nearest factor graph. Distances to all but the k2 nearest neighbors are set to 0 (cuts down on memory usage for very large graphs). (default 500)
prune.thresh	Minimum allowed edge weight. Any edges below this are removed (given weight 0) (default 0.2)
ref_dataset	Name of dataset to use as a "reference" for normalization. By default, the dataset with the largest number of cells is used.
min_cells	Minimum number of cells to consider a cluster shared across datasets (default 2)
quantiles	Number of quantiles to use for quantile normalization (default 50).
nstart	Number of times to perform Louvain community detection with different random starts (default 10).
resolution	Controls the number of communities detected. Higher resolution -> more communities. (default 1)
dims.use	Indices of factors to use for shared nearest factor determination (default 1:ncol(H[[1]])).
dist.use	Distance metric to use in calculating nearest neighbors (default "CR").
center	Centers the data when scaling factors (useful for less sparse modalities like methylation data). (default FALSE)
small.clust.thresh	Extracts small clusters loading highly on single factor with fewer cells than this before regular alignment (default 0 – no small cluster extraction).
id.number	Number to use for identifying edge file (when running in parallel) (generates random value by default).
print.mod	Print modularity output from clustering algorithm (default FALSE).
print.align.summary	Print summary of clusters which did not align normally (default FALSE).

Details

This process builds a shared factor neighborhood graph to jointly cluster cells, then quantile normalizes corresponding clusters.

The first step, building the shared factor neighborhood graph, is performed in SNF(), and produces a graph representation where edge weights between cells (across all datasets) correspond to their similarity in the shared factor neighborhood space. An important parameter here is knn_k, the number of neighbors used to build the shared factor space (see SNF()). Afterwards, modularity-based community detection is performed on this graph (Louvain clustering) in order to identify shared clusters across datasets. The method was first developed by Waltman and van Eck (2013) and source code is available at http://www.ludowaltman.nl/slm/. The most important parameter here is resolution, which corresponds to the number of communities detected.

Next we perform quantile alignment for each dataset, factor, and cluster (by stretching/compressing datasets' quantiles to better match those of the reference dataset). These aligned factor loadings are combined into a single matrix and returned as H.norm.

Value

`liger` object with H.norm and cluster slots set.

Examples

```
## Not run:
# liger object, factorization complete
ligerex
# do basic quantile alignment
ligerex <- quantileAlignSNF(ligerex)
# higher resolution for more clusters (note that SNF is conserved)
ligerex <- quantileAlignSNF(ligerex, resolution = 1.2)
# change knn_k for more fine-grained local clustering
ligerex <- quantileAlignSNF(ligerex, knn_k = 15, resolution = 1.2)

## End(Not run)
```

`quantileNorm` *Quantile Align (Normalize) Factor Loadings*

Description

This process builds a shared factor neighborhood graph to jointly cluster cells, then quantile normalizes corresponding clusters.

The first step, building the shared factor neighborhood graph, is performed in SNF(), and produces a graph representation where edge weights between cells (across all datasets) correspond to their similarity in the shared factor neighborhood space. An important parameter here is `nNeighbors`, the number of neighbors used to build the shared factor space.

Next we perform quantile alignment for each dataset, factor, and cluster (by stretching/compressing datasets' quantiles to better match those of the reference dataset).

Usage

```
quantileNorm(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
quantileNorm(
  object,
  quantiles = 50,
  reference = NULL,
  minCells = 20,
  nNeighbors = 20,
  useDims = NULL,
  center = FALSE,
  maxSample = 1000,
  eps = 0.9,
  refineKNN = TRUE,
  clusterName = "quantileNorm_cluster",
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
quantileNorm(
  object,
  reduction = "inmf",
  quantiles = 50,
  reference = NULL,
  minCells = 20,
  nNeighbors = 20,
  useDims = NULL,
  center = FALSE,
  maxSample = 1000,
  eps = 0.9,
  refineKNN = TRUE,
  clusterName = "quantileNorm_cluster",
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger or Seurat object with valid factorization result available (i.e. runIntegration performed in advance).
...	Arguments passed to other S3 methods of this function.
quantiles	Number of quantiles to use for quantile normalization. Default 50.
reference	Character, numeric or logical selection of one dataset, out of all available datasets in object, to use as a "reference" for quantile normalization. Default NULL tries

	to find an RNA dataset with the largest number of cells; if no RNA dataset available, use the globally largest dataset.
minCells	Minimum number of cells to consider a cluster shared across datasets. Default 20.
nNeighbors	Number of nearest neighbors for within-dataset knn graph. Default 20.
useDims	Indices of factors to use for shared nearest factor determination. Default NULL uses all factors.
center	Whether to center the data when scaling factors. Could be useful for less sparse modalities like methylation data. Default FALSE.
maxSample	Maximum number of cells used for quantile normalization of each cluster and factor. Default 1000.
eps	The error bound of the nearest neighbor search. Lower values give more accurate nearest neighbor graphs but take much longer to compute. Default 0.9.
refineKNN	whether to increase robustness of cluster assignments using KNN graph. Default TRUE.
clusterName	Variable name that will store the clustering result in metadata of a liger object or a Seurat object. Default "quantileNorm_cluster"
seed	Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default 1.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
reduction	Name of the reduction where LIGER integration result is stored. Default "inmf".

Value

Updated input object

- liger method
  - Update the H.norm slot for the alignment cell factor loading, ready for running graph based community detection clustering or dimensionality reduction for visualization.
  - Update the cellMata slot with a cluster assignment basing on cell factor loading
- Seurat method
  - Update the reductions slot with a new DimReduc object containing the aligned cell factor loading.
  - Update the metadata with a cluster assignment basing on cell factor loading

Examples

```
pbmc <- quantileNorm(pbmcPlot)
```

rawPeak *Access ligerATACDataset peak data*

Description

Similar as how default ligerDataset data is accessed.

Usage

```
rawPeak(x, dataset)

rawPeak(x, dataset, check = TRUE) <- value

normPeak(x, dataset)

normPeak(x, dataset, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger,character'
rawPeak(x, dataset)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,character'
rawPeak(x, dataset, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'liger,character'
normPeak(x, dataset)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'liger,character'
normPeak(x, dataset, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'ligerATACDataset,missing'
rawPeak(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerATACDataset,missing'
rawPeak(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value

## S4 method for signature 'ligerATACDataset,missing'
normPeak(x, dataset = NULL)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'ligerATACDataset,missing'
normPeak(x, dataset = NULL, check = TRUE) <- value
```

Arguments

x	ligerATACDataset object or a liger object.
dataset	Name or numeric index of an ATAC dataset.
check	Logical, whether to perform object validity check on setting new value.
value	dgCMatrix-class matrix.

Value

The retrieved peak count matrix or the updated x object.

`read10X` *Load in data from 10X*

Description

Enables easy loading of sparse data matrices provided by 10X genomics.

`read10X` works generally for 10X cellranger pipelines including: CellRanger < 3.0 & >= 3.0 and CellRanger-ARC.

`read10XRNA` invokes `read10X` and takes the "Gene Expression" out, so that the result can directly be used to construct a liger object. See Examples for demonstration.

`read10XATAC` works for both cellRanger-ARC and cellRanger-ATAC pipelines but needs user arguments for correct recognition. Similarly, the returned value can directly be used for constructing a liger object.

Usage

```
read10X(
  path,
  sampleNames = NULL,
  addPrefix = FALSE,
  useFiltered = NULL,
  reference = NULL,
  geneCol = 2,
  cellCol = 1,
  returnList = FALSE,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  sample.dirs = path,
  sample.names = sampleNames,
  use.filtered = useFiltered,
  data.type = NULL,
  merge = NULL,
  num.cells = NULL,
  min.umis = NULL
)

read10XRNA(
  path,
  sampleNames = NULL,
  addPrefix = FALSE,
  useFiltered = NULL,
  reference = NULL,
  returnList = FALSE,
```

```
  ...
)

read10XATAC(
  path,
  sampleNames = NULL,
  addPrefix = FALSE,
  useFiltered = NULL,
  pipeline = c("atac", "arc"),
  arcFeatureType = "Peaks",
  returnList = FALSE,
  geneCol = 2,
  cellCol = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE)
)
```

Arguments

path	(A.) A Directory containing the matrix.mtx, genes.tsv (or features.tsv), and barcodes.tsv files provided by 10X. A vector, a named vector, a list or a named list can be given in order to load several data directories. (B.) The 10X root directory where subdirectories of per-sample output folders can be found. Sample names will by default take the name of the vector, list or subfolders.
sampleNames	A vector of names to override the detected or set sample names for what is given to path. Default NULL. If no name detected at all and multiple samples are given, will name them by numbers.
addPrefix	Logical, whether to add sample names as a prefix to the barcodes. Default FALSE.
useFiltered	Logical, if path is given as case B, whether to use the filtered feature barcode matrix instead of raw (unfiltered). Default TRUE.
reference	In case of specifying a CellRanger<3 root folder to path, import the matrix from the output using which reference. Only needed when multiple references present. Default NULL.
geneCol	Specify which column of genes.tsv or features.tsv to use for gene names. Default 2.
cellCol	Specify which column of barcodes.tsv to use for cell names. Default 1.
returnList	Logical, whether to still return a structured list instead of a single matrix object, in the case where only one sample and only one feature type can be found. Otherwise will always return a list. Default FALSE.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
sample.dirs, sample.names, use.filtered	These arguments are renamed and will be deprecated in the future. Please see usage for corresponding arguments.
data.type, merge, num.cells, min.umis	These arguments are defuncted because the functionality can/should be fulfilled with other functions.

...	Arguments passed to read10X
pipeline	Which cellRanger pipeline type to find the ATAC data. Choose "atac" to read the peak matrix from cellranger-atac pipeline output folder(s), or "arc" to split the ATAC feature subset out from the multiomic cellranger-arc pipeline output folder(s). Default "atac".
arcFeatureType	When pipeline = "arc", which feature type is for the ATAC data of interests. Default "Peaks". Other possible feature types can be "Chromatin Accessibility". Error message will show available options if argument specification cannot be found.

Value

- When only one sample is given or detected, and only one feature type is detected or using CellRanger < 3.0, and returnList = FALSE, a sparse matrix object (dgCMatrix class) will be returned.
- When using read10XRNA or read10XATAC, which are modality specific, returns a list named by samples, and each element is the corresponding sparse matrix object (dgCMatrix class).
- read10X generally returns a list named by samples. Each sample element will be another list named by feature types even if only one feature type is detected (or using CellRanger < 3.0) for data structure consistency. The feature type "Gene Expression" always comes as the first type if available.

Examples

```
## Not run:
# For output from CellRanger < 3.0
dir <- 'path/to/data/directory'
list.files(dir) # Should show barcodes.tsv, genes.tsv, and matrix.mtx
mat <- read10X(dir)
class(mat) # Should show dgCMatrix

# For root directory from CellRanger < 3.0
dir <- 'path/to/root'
list.dirs(dir) # Should show sample names
matList <- read10X(dir)
names(matList) # Should show the sample names
class(matList[[1]][["Gene Expression"]]) # Should show dgCMatrix

# For output from CellRanger >= 3.0 with multiple data types
dir <- 'path/to/data/directory'
list.files(dir) # Should show barcodes.tsv.gz, features.tsv.gz, and matrix.mtx.gz
matList <- read10X(dir, sampleNames = "tissue1")
names(matList) # Shoud show "tissue1"
names(matList$tissue1) # Should show feature types, e.g. "Gene Expression" and etc.

# For root directory from CellRanger >= 3.0 with multiple data types
dir <- 'path/to/root'
list.dirs(dir) # Should show sample names, e.g. "rep1", "rep2", "rep3"
matList <- read10X(dir)
names(matList) # Should show the sample names: "rep1", "rep2", "rep3"
```

```
names(matList$rep1) # Should show the avalable feature types for rep1

## End(Not run)
## Not run:
# For creating LIGER object from root directory of CellRanger >= 3.0
dir <- 'path/to/root'
list.dirs(dir) # Should show sample names, e.g. "rep1", "rep2", "rep3"
matList <- read10XRNA(dir)
names(matList) # Should show the sample names: "rep1", "rep2", "rep3"
sapply(matList, class) # Should show matrix class all are "dgCMatrix"
lig <- createLigerObject(matList)

## End(Not run)
```

`read10XFiles` *Read 10X cellranger files (matrix, barcodes and features) into R session*

Description

This function works for loading a single sample with specifying the paths to the matrix.mtx, barcodes.tsv, and features.tsv files. This function is internally used by `read10X` functions for loading individual samples from cellranger output directory, while it can also be convenient when out-of-standard files are presented (e.g. data downloaded from GEO).

Usage

```
read10XFiles(
  matrixPath,
  barcodesPath,
  featuresPath,
  sampleName = NULL,
  geneCol = 2,
  cellCol = 1,
  isATAC = FALSE,
  returnList = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`matrixPath`	Character string, path to the matrix MTX file. Can be gzipped.
`barcodesPath`	Character string, path to the barcodes TSV file. Can be gzipped.
`featuresPath`	Character string, path to the features TSV file. Can be gzipped.
`sampleName`	Character string attached as a prefix to the cell barcodes loaded from the barcodes file. Default `NULL` does not add any prefix. Useful when users plan to merge multiple samples into one matrix and need to avoid duplicated cell barcodes from different batches.

geneCol	An integer indicating which column in the features file to extract as the feature identifiers. Default 2.
cellCol	An integer indicating which column in the barcodes file to extract as the cell identifiers. Default 1.
isATAC	Logical, whether the data is for ATAC-seq. Default FALSE. If TRUE, feature identifiers will be generated by combining the first three columns of the features file in the format of "chr:start-end".
returnList	Logical, used internally by wrapper functions. Whether to force putting the loaded matrix in a list even if there's only one matrix. Default FALSE.

Value

For a single-modal sample, a dgCMatrix object, or a list of one dgCMatrix when returnList = TRUE. A list of multiple dgCMatrix objects when multiple feature types are detected.

Examples

```
## Not run:
matrix <- read10XFiles(
    matrixPath = "path/to/matrix.mtx.gz",
    barcodesPath = "path/to/barcodes.tsv.gz",
    featuresPath = "path/to/features.tsv.gz"
)

## End(Not run)
```

---

read10XH5 *Read 10X HDF5 file*

Description

Read count matrix from 10X CellRanger HDF5 file. By default, read10XH5 load scRNA, scATAC or multimodal data into memory (inMemory = TRUE). To use LIGER in delayed mode for handling large datasets, set inMemory = FALSE to load the data as a DelayedArray object. The delayed mode only supports scRNA data for now.

Usage

```
read10XH5(filename, inMemory = TRUE, useNames = TRUE, featureMakeUniq = TRUE)

read10XH5Mem(filename, useNames = TRUE, featureMakeUniq = TRUE)

read10XH5Delay(filename, useNames = TRUE, featureMakeUniq = TRUE)
```

Arguments

filename	Character string, path to the HDF5 file.
inMemory	Logical, whether to load the data into memory. Default TRUE. FALSE loads the data as a DelayedArray object.
useNames	Logical, whether to use gene names as row names. Default TRUE. FALSE uses gene IDs instead.
featureMakeUniq	Logical, whether to make gene names unique. Default TRUE.

Value

A sparse matrix when only using older CellRanger output HDF5 file or when only one genome and one modality is detected. When multiple genomes are available, will return a list for each genome. When using multimodal data, each genome will be a list of matrices for each modality. The matrix will be of dgCMatrix class when in memory, or a TENxMatrix object when in delayed mode.

Examples

```
matrix <- read10XH5(
    filename = system.file("extdata/ctrl.h5", package = "rliger"),
    inMemory = TRUE
)
class(matrix) # Should show dgCMatrix
if (requireNamespace("HDF5Array", quietly = TRUE)) {
   matrix <- read10XH5(
      filename = system.file("extdata/ctrl.h5", package = "rliger"),
      inMemory = FALSE
   )
   print(class(matrix)) # Should show TENxMatrix
}
```

---

readH5AD *Read matrix from H5AD file*

Description

Read raw count matrix from H5AD file. By default, readH5AD load specified layer into memory (inMemory = TRUE). To use LIGER in delayed mode for handling large datasets, set inMemory = FALSE to load the data as a DelayedArray object. Note that only CSR format is supported for the matrix.

Usage

```
readH5AD(filename, layer, inMemory = TRUE, obs = FALSE)

readH5ADMem(filename, layer, obs = FALSE)

readH5ADDelay(filename, layer, obs = FALSE)
```

Arguments

filename	Character string, path to the H5AD file.
layer	Character string specifying the H5 path of raw count data to be loaded. Use 'X' for adata.X, 'raw/X' for adata.raw.X, or 'layers/layer_name' for adata.layers['layer_name'].
inMemory	Logical, whether to load the data into memory. Default TRUE. FALSE loads the data as a DelayedArray object.
obs	Logical, whether to also load the cell metadata from adata.obs. Default FALSE.

Details

Currently, the only supported H5AD AnnData encoding versions are as follows:

- adata.X, adata.raw.X, or adata.layers['layer'] - csr_matrix 0.1.0
- adata.obs and adata.var - dataframe 0.2.0
- Categoricals in a data frame - categorical 0.2.0

If users possess H5AD files encoded with older specification, please either open an issue on GitHub or use R package 'anndata' to manually extract information.

Value

When loaded in memory, a sparse matrix of class dgCMatrix will be returned. When loaded in delayed mode, a TENxMatrix object will be returned. If obs = TRUE, a list containing the matrix and the cell metadata will be returned.

Examples

```
tempH5AD <- tempfile(fileext = '.h5ad')
writeH5AD(pbmc, tempH5AD, overwrite = TRUE)
mat <- readH5AD(tempH5AD, layer = 'X')
delayMat <- readH5AD(tempH5AD, layer = 'X', inMemory = FALSE)
```

---

readLiger *Read liger object from RDS file*

Description

This file reads a liger object stored in RDS files under all kinds of types.

1. A liger object with in-memory data created from package version since 1.99.
2. A liger object with on-disk H5 data associated, where the link to H5 files will be automatically restored.
3. A liger object created with older package version, and can be updated to the latest data structure by default.

Usage

```
readLiger(
  filename,
  dimredName,
  clusterName = "clusters",
  h5FilePath = NULL,
  update = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

filename	Path to an RDS file of a liger object of old versions.
dimredName	The name of variable in cellMeta slot to store the dimensionality reduction matrix, which originally located in tsne.coords slot. Default "tsne.coords".
clusterName	The name of variable in cellMeta slot to store the clustering assignment, which originally located in clusters slot. Default "clusters".
h5FilePath	Named character vector for all H5 file paths. Not required for object run with in-memory analysis. For object containing H5-based analysis (e.g. online iNMF), this must be supplied if the H5 file location is different from that at creation time.
update	Logical, whether to update an old (<=1.99.0) liger object to the currect version of structure. Default TRUE.

Value

New version of liger object

Examples

```
# Save and read regular current-version liger object
tempPath <- tempfile(fileext = ".rds")
saveRDS(pbmc, tempPath)

pbmc <- readLiger(tempPath, dimredName = NULL)

# Save and read H5-based liger object
h5Path <- system.file("extdata/ctrl.h5", package = "rliger")
h5tempPath <- tempfile(fileext = ".h5")
file.copy(from = h5Path, to = h5tempPath)
lig <- createLiger(list(ctrl = h5tempPath))
tempPath <- tempfile(fileext = ".rds")
saveRDS(lig, tempPath)

lig <- readLiger(tempPath, h5FilePath = list(ctrl = h5tempPath))

## Not run:
# Read a old liger object <= 1.0.1
# Assume the dimensionality reduction method applied was UMAP
# Assume the clustering was derived with Louvain method
```

```
lig <- readLiger(
    filename = "path/to/oldLiger.rds",
    dimredName = "UMAP",
    clusterName = "louvain"
)

## End(Not run)
```

---

readSubset **[Superseded]** *See* downsample

Description

This function mainly aims at downsampling datasets to a size suitable for plotting.

Usage

```
readSubset(
  object,
  slot.use = "normData",
  balance = NULL,
  max.cells = 1000,
  chunk = 1000,
  datasets.use = NULL,
  genes.use = NULL,
  rand.seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE)
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object
slot.use	Only create subset from one or more of "rawData", "normData" and "scaleData". Default NULL subsets the whole object including downstream results.
balance	"all" for sampling maxCells cells from all datasets specified by useDatasets. "cluster" for sampling maxCells cells per cluster per dataset. "dataset" for maxCells cells per dataset.
max.cells	Max number of cells to sample from the grouping based on balance.
chunk	Integer. Number of maximum number of cells in each chunk, Default 1000.
datasets.use	Index selection of datasets to consider. Default NULL for using all datasets.
genes.use	Character vector. Subset features to this specified range. Default NULL does not subset features.
rand.seed	Random seed for reproducibility. Default 1.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.

Value

Subset of liger object.

See Also

downsample, subsetLiger, subsetLigerDataset

---

removeMissing *Remove missing cells or features from liger object*

Description

Remove missing cells or features from liger object

Usage

```
removeMissing(
  object,
  orient = c("both", "feature", "cell"),
  minCells = NULL,
  minFeatures = NULL,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  newH5 = TRUE,
  filenameSuffix = "removeMissing",
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

removeMissingObs(
  object,
  slot.use = NULL,
  use.cols = TRUE,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE)
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object
orient	Choose to remove non-expressing features ("feature"), empty barcodes ("cell"), or both of them ("both"). Default "both".
minCells	Keep features that are expressed in at least this number of cells, calculated on a per-dataset base. A single value for all datasets or a vector for each dataset. Default NULL only removes none expressing features.
minFeatures	Keep cells that express at least this number of features, calculated on a per-dataset base. A single value for all datasets or a vector for each dataset. Default NULL only removes none expressing cells.

useDatasets	A character vector of the names, a numeric or logical vector of the index of the datasets to be processed. Default NULL removes empty entries from all datasets.
newH5	Logical, whether to create a new H5 file on disk for each H5-based dataset on subset. Default TRUE
filenameSuffix	When subsetting H5-based datasets to new H5 files, this suffix will be added to all the filenames. Default "removeMissing".
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
...	Arguments passed to subsetLigerDataset
slot.use	**Deprecated**. Always look at rawData slot of inner ligerDataset objects.
use.cols	**Deprecated**. Previously means "treating each column as a cell" when TRUE, now means orient="cell".

Value

Updated (subset) object.

Note

removeMissingObs will be deprecated. removeMissing covers and expands the use case and should be easier to understand.

Examples

```
# The example dataset does not contain non-expressing genes or empty barcodes
pbmc <- removeMissing(pbmc)
```

---

restoreH5Liger *Restore links (to HDF5 files) for reloaded liger/ligerDataset object*

Description

When loading the saved liger object with HDF5 data in a new R session, the links to HDF5 files would be closed. This function enables the restoration of those links so that new analyses can be carried out.

Usage

```
restoreH5Liger(object, filePath = NULL)

restoreOnlineLiger(object, file.path = NULL)
```

Arguments

object	liger or ligerDataset object.
filePath	Paths to HDF5 files. A single character path for ligerDataset input or a list of paths named by the datasets for liger object input. Default NULL looks for the path(s) of the last valid loading.
file.path	Will be deprecated with restoreOnlineLiger. The same as filePath.

Value

object with restored links.

Note

restoreOnlineLiger will be deprecated for clarifying the terms used for data structure.

Examples

```
h5Path <- system.file("extdata/ctrl.h5", package = "rliger")
tempPath <- tempfile(fileext = ".h5")
file.copy(from = h5Path, to = tempPath)
lig <- createLiger(list(ctrl = tempPath))
# Now it is actually an invalid object! which is equivalent to what users
# will get with `saveRDS(lig, "object.rds"); lig <- readRDS("object.rds")``
closeAllH5(lig)
lig <- restoreH5Liger(lig)
```

---

retrieveCellFeature *Retrieve a single matrix of cells from a slot*

Description

Only retrieve data from specific slot to reduce memory used by a whole liger object of the subset. Useful for plotting. Internally used by plotDimRed and plotCellViolin.

Usage

```
retrieveCellFeature(
  object,
  feature,
  slot = c("rawData", "normData", "scaleData", "H", "H.norm", "cellMeta", "rawPeak",
    "normPeak"),
  cellIdx = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object
feature	Gene names, factor index or cell metadata variable names. Should be available in specified slot.
slot	Exactly choose from "rawData", "normData", "scaleData", "H", "H.norm" or "cellMeta".
cellIdx	Any valid type of index that subset from all cells. Default NULL uses all cells.
...	Additional arguments passed to subsetLiger when slot is one of "rawData", "normData" or "scaleData".

Value

A matrix object where rows are cells and columns are specified features.

Examples

```
S100A8Exp <- retrieveCellFeature(pbmc, "S100A8")
qcMetrics <- retrieveCellFeature(pbmc, c("nUMI", "nGene", "mito"),
                                 slot = "cellMeta")
```

---

reverseMethData *Create "scaled data" for DNA methylation datasets*

Description

Because gene body mCH proportions are negatively correlated with gene expression level in neurons, we need to reverse the direction of the methylation data. We do this by simply subtracting all values from the maximum methylation value. The resulting values are positively correlated with gene expression. This will only be applied to variable genes detected in prior.

Usage

```
reverseMethData(object, useDatasets, verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE))
```

Arguments

object	A liger object, with variable genes identified.
useDatasets	Required. A character vector of the names, a numeric or logical vector of the index of the datasets that should be identified as methylation data where the reversed data will be created.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.

Value

The input liger object, where the scaleData slot of the specified datasets will be updated with value as described in Description.

Examples

```
# Assuming the second dataset in example data "pbmc" is methylation data
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc, useDatasets = 1)
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc, datasets.use = 1)
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc, useDatasets = 1)
pbmc <- reverseMethData(pbmc, useDatasets = 2)
```

---

runCINMF *Perform consensus iNMF on scaled datasets*

Description

[Experimental] This is an experimental function and is subject to change.

Performs consensus integrative non-negative matrix factorization (c-iNMF) to return factorized H, W, and V matrices. In order to address the non-convex nature of NMF, we built on the cNMF method proposed by D. Kotliar, 2019. We run the regular iNMF multiple times with different random starts, and cluster the pool of all the factors in W and Vs and take the consensus of the clusters of the largest population. The cell factor loading H matrices are eventually solved with the consensus W and V matrices.

Please see runINMF for detailed introduction to the regular iNMF algorithm which is run multiple times in this function.

The consensus iNMF algorithm is developed basing on the consensus NMF (cNMF) method (D. Kotliar et al., 2019).

Usage

```
runCINMF(object, k = 20, lambda = 5, rho = 0.3, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
runCINMF(
  object,
  k = 20,
  lambda = 5,
  rho = 0.3,
  nIteration = 30,
  nRandomStarts = 10,
  HInit = NULL,
  WInit = NULL,
  VInit = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  nCores = 2L,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
```

```
runCINMF(
  object,
  k = 20,
  lambda = 5,
  rho = 0.3,
  datasetVar = "orig.ident",
  layer = "ligerScaleData",
  assay = NULL,
  reduction = "cinmf",
  nIteration = 30,
  nRandomStarts = 10,
  HInit = NULL,
  WInit = NULL,
  VInit = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  nCores = 2L,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object or a Seurat object with non-negative scaled data of variable features (Done with scaleNotCenter).
k	Inner dimension of factorization (number of factors). Generally, a higher k will be needed for datasets with more sub-structure. Default 20.
lambda	Regularization parameter. Larger values penalize dataset-specific effects more strongly (i.e. alignment should increase as lambda increases). Default 5.
rho	Numeric number between 0 and 1. Fraction for determining the number of nearest neighbors to look at for consensus (by rho * nRandomStarts). Default 0.3.
...	Arguments passed to methods.
nIteration	Total number of block coordinate descent iterations to perform. Default 30.
nRandomStarts	Number of replicate runs for creating the pool of factorization results. Default 10.
HInit	Initial values to use for H matrices. A list object where each element is the initial H matrix of each dataset. Default NULL.
WInit	Initial values to use for W matrix. A matrix object. Default NULL.
VInit	Initial values to use for V matrices. A list object where each element is the initial V matrix of each dataset. Default NULL.
seed	Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default 1.
nCores	The number of parallel tasks to speed up the computation. Default 2L. Only supported for platform with OpenMP support.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
datasetVar	Metadata variable name that stores the dataset source annotation. Default "orig.ident".

layer	For Seurat>=4.9.9, the name of layer to retrieve input non-negative scaled data. Default "ligerScaleData". For older Seurat, always retrieve from scale.data slot.
assay	Name of assay to use. Default NULL uses current active assay.
reduction	Name of the reduction to store result. Also used as the feature key. Default "cinmf".

Value

- liger method - Returns updated input liger object
  - A list of all H matrices can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "H")
  - A list of all V matrices can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "V")
  - The W matrix can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "W")
- Seurat method - Returns updated input Seurat object
  - H matrices for all datasets will be concatenated and transposed (all cells by k), and form a DimReduc object in the reductions slot named by argument reduction.
  - W matrix will be presented as feature.loadings in the same DimReduc object.
  - V matrices, an objective error value and the dataset variable used for the factorization is currently stored in misc slot of the same DimReduc object.

References

Joshua D. Welch and et al., Single-Cell Multi-omic Integration Compares and Contrasts Features of Brain Cell Identity, Cell, 2019

Dylan Kotliar and et al., Identifying gene expression programs of cell-type identity and cellular activity with single-cell RNA-Seq, eLife, 2019

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc)
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc)
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    pbmc <- runCINMF(pbmc)
}
```

---

runCluster *SNN Graph Based Community Detection*

Description

After aligning cell factor loadings, users can additionally run the Leiden or Louvain algorithm for community detection, which is widely used in single-cell analysis and excels at merging small clusters into broad cell classes.

While using aligned factor loadings (result from alignFactors) is recommended, this function looks for unaligned factor loadings (raw result from runIntegration) when the former is not available.

Usage

```
runCluster(
  object,
  resolution = 1,
  nNeighbors = 20,
  prune = 1/15,
  eps = 0.1,
  nRandomStarts = 10,
  nIterations = 5,
  method = c("leiden", "louvain"),
  useRaw = NULL,
  useDims = NULL,
  groupSingletons = TRUE,
  saveSNN = FALSE,
  clusterName = paste0(method, "_cluster"),
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE)
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object. Should have valid factorization result available.
resolution	Numeric, value of the resolution parameter, a larger value results in a larger number of communities with smaller sizes. Default 1.0.
nNeighbors	Integer, the maximum number of nearest neighbors to compute. Default 20.
prune	Numeric. Sets the cutoff for acceptable Jaccard index when computing the neighborhood overlap for the SNN construction. Any edges with values less than or equal to this will be set to 0 and removed from the SNN graph. Essentially sets the stringency of pruning. 0 for no pruning, while 1 prunes everything. Default 1/15.
eps	Numeric, the error bound of the nearest neighbor search. Default 0.1.
nRandomStarts	Integer number of random starts. Will pick the membership with highest quality to return. Default 10.
nIterations	Integer, maximal number of iterations per random start. Default 5.
method	Community detection algorithm to use. Choose from "leiden" or "louvain". Default "leiden".
useRaw	Whether to use un-aligned cell factor loadings (H matrices). Default NULL search for quantile-normalized loadings first and un-aligned loadings then.
useDims	Indices of factors to use for clustering. Default NULL uses all available factors.
groupSingletons	Whether to group single cells that make up their own cluster in with the cluster they are most connected to. Default TRUE, if FALSE, assign all singletons to a "singleton" group.
saveSNN	Logical, whether to store the SNN graph, as a dgCMatrix object, in the object. Default FALSE.

clusterName	Name of the variable that will store the clustering result in cellMeta slot of object. Default "leiden_cluster" and "louvain_cluster".
seed	Seed of the random number generator. Default 1.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.

Value

object with cluster assignment updated in clusterName variable in cellMeta slot. Can be fetched with object[[clusterName]]. If saveSNN = TRUE, the SNN graph will be stored at object@uns$snn.

Examples

```
pbmcPlot <- runCluster(pbmcPlot, nRandomStarts = 1)
head(pbmcPlot$leiden_cluster)

pbmcPlot <- runCluster(pbmcPlot, method = "louvain")
head(pbmcPlot$louvain_cluster)
```

---

runGeneralQC *General QC for liger object*

Description

Calculate number of UMIs, number of detected features and percentage of feature subset (e.g. mito, ribo and hemo) expression per cell.

Usage

```
runGeneralQC(
  object,
  organism,
  features = NULL,
  pattern = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  chunkSize = getOption("ligerChunkSize", 20000),
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  mito = NULL,
  ribo = NULL,
  hemo = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object with rawData available in each ligerDataset embedded
organism	Specify the organism of the dataset to identify the mitochondrial, ribosomal and hemoglobin genes. Available options are "mouse", "human", "zebrafish", "rat" and "drosophila". Set NULL to disable mito, ribo and hemo calculation.
features	Feature names matching the feature subsets that users want to calculate the expression percentage with. A vector for a single subset, or a named list for multiple subset. Default NULL.
pattern	Regex patterns for matching the feature subsets that users want to calculate the expression percentage with. A vector for a single subset, or a named list for multiple subset. Default NULL.
overwrite	Whether to overwrite existing QC metric variables. Default FALSE do not update existing result. Use TRUE for updating all. Use a character vector to specify which to update. See Details.
useDatasets	A character vector of the names, a numeric or logical vector of the index of the datasets to be included for QC. Default NULL performs QC on all datasets.
chunkSize	Integer number of cells to include in a chunk when working on HDF5 based dataset. Default 20000
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
mito, ribo, hemo	**[Deprecated]** Now will always compute the percentages of mitochondrial, ribosomal and hemoglobin gene counts. These arguments will be ignored.

Details

This function by default calculates:

- nUMI - The column sum of the raw data matrix per cell. Represents the total number of UMIs per cell if given raw counts.
- nGene - Number of detected features per cell
- mito - Percentage of mitochondrial gene expression per cell
- ribo - Percentage of ribosomal gene expression per cell
- hemo - Percentage of hemoglobin gene expression per cell

Users can also specify their own feature subsets with argument features, or regular expression patterns that match to genes of interests with argument pattern, to calculate the expression percentage. If a character vector is given to features, a QC metric variable named "featureSubset_name" will be computed. If a named list of multiple subsets is given, the names will be used as the variable names. If a single pattern is given to pattern, a QC metric variable named "featureSubset_pattern" will be computed. If a named list of multiple patterns is given, the names will be used as the variable names. **Duplicated QC metric names between these two arguments and the default five listed above should be avoided.**

This function is automatically operated at the creation time of each liger object to capture the raw status. Argument overwrite is set to FALSE by default to avoid mistakenly updating existing

metrics after filtering the object. Users can still opt to update all newly calculated metrics (including the default five) by setting `overwrite = TRUE`, or only some of newly calculated ones by providing a character vector of the names of the metrics to update. Intended overwriting only happens to datasets selected with `useDatasets`.

Value

Updated `object` with the `cellMeta(object)` updated as intended by users. See Details for more information.

Examples

```
pbmc <- runGeneralQC(pbmc, "human", overwrite = TRUE)
```

`runGOEnrich` *Run Gene Ontology enrichment analysis on differentially expressed genes.*

Description

This function forms genesets basing on the differential expression result, and calls gene ontology (GO) analysis method provided by gprofiler2.

Usage

```
runGOEnrich(
  result,
  group = NULL,
  useBg = TRUE,
  orderBy = NULL,
  logFCThresh = 1,
  padjThresh = 0.05,
  splitReg = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`result`	Data frame of unfiltered output from `runMarkerDEG` or `runPairwiseDEG`.
`group`	Selection of one group available from `result$group`. Default `NULL` uses all groups involved in DE `result` table.
`useBg`	Logical, whether to set all genes involved in DE analysis (before threshold filtering) as a domain background of GO analysis. Default `TRUE`. Otherwise use all annotated genes from gprofiler2 database.
`orderBy`	Name of DE statistics metric to order the gene list for each group. Choose from `"logFC"`, `"pval"` or `"padj"` to enable ranked mode. Default `NULL` to use two-list mode.

logFCThresh The absolute valued log2FC threshold above which the genes will be used. Default 1.

padjThresh The adjusted p-value threshold less than which the genes will be used. Default 0.05.

splitReg Whether to have queries of both up-regulated and down-regulated genes for each group. Default FALSE only queries up-regulated genes and should be preferred when result comes from marker detection test. When result comes from group-to-group DE test, it is recommended to set splitReg = TRUE.

... Additional arguments passed to gprofiler2::gost(). Useful ones are:

organism The organism to be used for the analysis. "hsapiens" for human, "mmusculus" for mouse.

evcodes Whether to include overlapping genes for each term. Default FALSE.

significant Whether to filter out non-significant terms. Default TRUE.

Arguments query, custom_bg, domain_scope, and ordered_query are pre-specified by this wrapper function.

Details

GO term enrichment test often goes with two modes: two-list mode and ranked mode.

Two-list mode comes with a query gene set and a background gene set. A query gene set contains the filtered DEGs in this analysis. A background can be all the genes involved in the DEG test (default, useBg = TRUE), or use all annotated genes in the gprofiler2 database (useBg = FALSE).

Ranked mode comes with only one query gene set, which is sorted. It should contain the whole domain background genes while significant genes are supposed to come first. Set orderBy to one of the DE statistics metric to enable this mode. useBg will be ignored in this mode.

Value

A list object where each element is a result list for a group. Each result list contains two elements:

result data.frame of main GO analysis result.

meta Meta information for the query.

See gprofiler2::gost(). for detailed explanation.

References

Kolberg, L. et al, 2020 and Raudvere, U. et al, 2019

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("gprofiler2", quietly = TRUE)) {
    go <- runGOEnrich(deg.pw)
}
```

runGSEA *Analyze biological interpretations of metagene*

Description

Identify the biological pathways (gene sets from Reactome) that each metagene (factor) might belongs to.

Usage

```
runGSEA(
  object,
  genesets = NULL,
  useW = TRUE,
  useV = NULL,
  customGenesets = NULL,
  gene_sets = genesets,
  mat_w = useW,
  mat_v = useV,
  custom_gene_sets = customGenesets
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object with valid factorization result.
genesets	Character vector of the Reactome gene sets names to be tested. Default NULL uses all the gene sets from the Reactome.
useW	Logical, whether to use the shared factor loadings (W). Default TRUE.
useV	A character vector of the names, a numeric or logical vector of the index of the datasets where the V matrices will be included for analysis. Default NULL uses all datasets.
customGenesets	A named list of character vectors of entrez gene ids. Default NULL uses all the gene symbols from the input matrix.
gene_sets, mat_w, mat_v, custom_gene_sets	**Deprecated**. See Usage section for replacement.

Value

A list of matrices with GSEA analysis for each factor

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("org.Hs.eg.db", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("reactome.db", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("fgsea", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("AnnotationDbi", quietly = TRUE)) {
```

```
    runGSEA(pbmcPlot)
}
```

`runINMF` *Perform iNMF on scaled datasets*

Description

Performs integrative non-negative matrix factorization (iNMF) (J.D. Welch, 2019) using block coordinate descent (alternating non-negative least squares, ANLS) to return factorized H, W, and V matrices. The objective function is stated as

$$\arg \min_{H \geq 0, W \geq 0, V \geq 0} \sum_{i}^{d} ||E_i - (W + V_i)Hi||_F^2 + \lambda \sum_{i}^{d} ||V_i H_i||_F^2$$

where E_i is the input non-negative matrix of the i'th dataset, d is the total number of datasets. E_i is of size $m \times n_i$ for m variable genes and n_i cells, H_i is of size $n_i \times k$, V_i is of size $m \times k$, and W is of size $m \times k$.

The factorization produces a shared W matrix (genes by k), and for each dataset, an H matrix (k by cells) and a V matrix (genes by k). The H matrices represent the cell factor loadings. W is held consistent among all datasets, as it represents the shared components of the metagenes across datasets. The V matrices represent the dataset-specific components of the metagenes.

This function adopts highly optimized fast and memory efficient implementation extended from Planc (Kannan, 2016). Pre-installation of extension package `RcppPlanc` is required. The underlying algorithm adopts the identical ANLS strategy as `optimizeALS` in the old version of LIGER.

Usage

```
runINMF(object, k = 20, lambda = 5, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
runINMF(
  object,
  k = 20,
  lambda = 5,
  nIteration = 30,
  nRandomStarts = 1,
  HInit = NULL,
  WInit = NULL,
  VInit = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  nCores = 2L,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

```
## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
runINMF(
  object,
  k = 20,
  lambda = 5,
  datasetVar = "orig.ident",
  layer = "ligerScaleData",
  assay = NULL,
  reduction = "inmf",
  nIteration = 30,
  nRandomStarts = 1,
  HInit = NULL,
  WInit = NULL,
  VInit = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  nCores = 2L,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object or a Seurat object with non-negative scaled data of variable features (Done with scaleNotCenter).
k	Inner dimension of factorization (number of factors). Generally, a higher k will be needed for datasets with more sub-structure. Default 20.
lambda	Regularization parameter. Larger values penalize dataset-specific effects more strongly (i.e. alignment should increase as lambda increases). Default 5.
...	Arguments passed to methods.
nIteration	Total number of block coordinate descent iterations to perform. Default 30.
nRandomStarts	Number of restarts to perform (iNMF objective function is non-convex, so taking the best objective from multiple successive initialization is recommended). For easier reproducibility, this increments the random seed by 1 for each consecutive restart, so future factorization of the same dataset can be run with one rep if necessary. Default 1.
HInit	Initial values to use for H matrices. A list object where each element is the initial H matrix of each dataset. Default NULL.
WInit	Initial values to use for W matrix. A matrix object. Default NULL.
VInit	Initial values to use for V matrices. A list object where each element is the initial V matrix of each dataset. Default NULL.
seed	Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default 1.
nCores	The number of parallel tasks to speed up the computation. Default 2L. Only supported for platform with OpenMP support.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.

datasetVar	Metadata variable name that stores the dataset source annotation. Default "orig.ident".
layer	For Seurat>=4.9.9, the name of layer to retrieve input non-negative scaled data. Default "ligerScaleData". For older Seurat, always retrieve from scale.data slot.
assay	Name of assay to use. Default NULL uses current active assay.
reduction	Name of the reduction to store result. Also used as the feature key. Default "inmf".

Value

- liger method - Returns updated input liger object
  - A list of all H matrices can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "H")
  - A list of all V matrices can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "V")
  - The W matrix can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "W")
- Seurat method - Returns updated input Seurat object
  - H matrices for all datasets will be concatenated and transposed (all cells by k), and form a DimReduc object in the reductions slot named by argument reduction.
  - W matrix will be presented as feature.loadings in the same DimReduc object.
  - V matrices, an objective error value and the dataset variable used for the factorization is currently stored in misc slot of the same DimReduc object.

Difference from optimizeALS()

In the old version implementation, we compute the objective error at the end of each iteration, and then compares if the algorithm is reaching a convergence, using an argument thresh. Now, since the computation of objective error is indeed expensive, we canceled this feature and directly runs a default of 30 (nIteration) iterations, which empirically leads to a convergence most of the time. Given that the new version is highly optimized, running this many iteration should be acceptable.

References

Joshua D. Welch and et al., Single-Cell Multi-omic Integration Compares and Contrasts Features of Brain Cell Identity, Cell, 2019

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc)
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc)
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    pbmc <- runINMF(pbmc)
}
```

`runIntegration` *Integrate scaled datasets with iNMF or variant methods*

Description

LIGER provides dataset integration methods based on iNMF (integrative Non-negative Matrix Factorization [1]) and its variants (online iNMF [2] and UINMF [3]). This function wraps `runINMF`, `runOnlineINMF` and `runUINMF`, of which the help pages have more detailed description.

Usage

```
runIntegration(
  object,
  k = 20,
  lambda = 5,
  method = c("iNMF", "onlineINMF", "UINMF"),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
runIntegration(
  object,
  k = 20,
  lambda = 5,
  method = c("iNMF", "onlineINMF", "UINMF"),
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
runIntegration(
  object,
  k = 20,
  lambda = 5,
  method = c("iNMF", "onlineINMF"),
  datasetVar = "orig.ident",
  useLayer = "ligerScaleData",
  assay = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object or a Seurat object with non-negative scaled data of variable features (Done with `scaleNotCenter`).

k	Inner dimension of factorization (number of factors). Generally, a higher k will be needed for datasets with more sub-structure. Default 20.
lambda	Regularization parameter. Larger values penalize dataset-specific effects more strongly (i.e. alignment should increase as lambda increases). Default 5.
method	iNMF variant algorithm to use for integration. Choose from "iNMF", "onlineINMF", "UINMF". Default "iNMF".
...	Arguments passed to other methods and wrapped functions.
seed	Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default 1.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
datasetVar	Metadata variable name that stores the dataset source annotation. Default "orig.ident".
useLayer	For Seurat>=4.9.9, the name of layer to retrieve input non-negative scaled data. Default "ligerScaleData". For older Seurat, always retrieve from scale.data slot.
assay	Name of assay to use. Default NULL uses current active assay.

Value

Updated input object. For detail, please refer to the refered method linked in Description.

References

1. Joshua D. Welch and et al., Single-Cell Multi-omic Integration Compares and Contrasts Features of Brain Cell Identity, Cell, 2019
2. Chao Gao and et al., Iterative single-cell multi-omic integration using online learning, Nat Biotechnol., 2021
3. April R. Kriebel and Joshua D. Welch, UINMF performs mosaic integration of single-cell multi-omic datasets using nonnegative matrix factorization, Nat. Comm., 2022

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc)
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc)
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    pbmc <- runIntegration(pbmc)
}
```

`runOnlineINMF` *Perform online iNMF on scaled datasets*

Description

Perform online integrative non-negative matrix factorization to represent multiple single-cell datasets in terms of H, W, and V matrices. It optimizes the iNMF objective function (see `runINMF`) using online learning (non-negative least squares for H matrices, and hierarchical alternating least squares (HALS) for V matrices and W), where the number of factors is set by `k`. The function allows online learning in 3 scenarios:

1. Fully observed datasets;
2. Iterative refinement using continually arriving datasets;
3. Projection of new datasets without updating the existing factorization

All three scenarios require fixed memory independent of the number of cells.

For each dataset, this factorization produces an H matrix (k by cell), a V matrix (genes by k), and a shared W matrix (genes by k). The H matrices represent the cell factor loadings. W is identical among all datasets, as it represents the shared components of the metagenes across datasets. The V matrices represent the dataset-specific components of the metagenes.

Usage

```
runOnlineINMF(object, k = 20, lambda = 5, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
runOnlineINMF(
  object,
  k = 20,
  lambda = 5,
  newDatasets = NULL,
  projection = FALSE,
  maxEpochs = 5,
  HALSiter = 1,
  minibatchSize = 5000,
  HInit = NULL,
  WInit = NULL,
  VInit = NULL,
  AInit = NULL,
  BInit = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  nCores = 2L,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

```
## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
runOnlineINMF(
  object,
  k = 20,
  lambda = 5,
  datasetVar = "orig.ident",
  layer = "ligerScaleData",
  assay = NULL,
  reduction = "onlineINMF",
  maxEpochs = 5,
  HALSiter = 1,
  minibatchSize = 5000,
  seed = 1,
  nCores = 2L,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`object`	liger object. Scaled data required.
`k`	Inner dimension of factorization–number of metagenes. A value in the range 20-50 works well for most analyses. Default `20`.
`lambda`	Regularization parameter. Larger values penalize dataset-specific effects more strongly (i.e. alignment should increase as lambda increases). We recommend always using the default value except possibly for analyses with relatively small differences (biological replicates, male/female comparisons, etc.) in which case a lower value such as 1.0 may improve reconstruction quality. Default `5.0`.
`...`	Arguments passed to other S3 methods of this function.
`newDatasets`	Named list of dgCMatrix-class object. New datasets for scenario 2 or scenario 3. Default `NULL` triggers scenario 1.
`projection`	Whether to perform data integration with scenario 3 when `newDatasets` is specified. See description. Default `FALSE`.
`maxEpochs`	The number of epochs to iterate through. See detail. Default `5`.
`HALSiter`	Maximum number of block coordinate descent (HALS algorithm) iterations to perform for each update of W and V. Default `1`. Changing this parameter is not recommended.
`minibatchSize`	Total number of cells in each minibatch. See detail. Default `5000`.
`HInit, WInit, VInit, AInit, BInit`	Optional initialization for H, W, V, A, and B matrices, respectively. Must be presented all together. See detail. Default `NULL`.
`seed`	Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default `1`.
`nCores`	The number of parallel tasks to speed up the computation. Default `2L`. Only supported for platform with OpenMP support.
`verbose`	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default `getOption("ligerVerbose")` or `TRUE` if users have not set.

datasetVar	Metadata variable name that stores the dataset source annotation. Default "orig.ident".
layer	For Seurat>=4.9.9, the name of layer to retrieve input non-negative scaled data. Default "ligerScaleData". For older Seurat, always retrieve from scale.data slot.
assay	Name of assay to use. Default NULL uses current active assay.
reduction	Name of the reduction to store result. Also used as the feature key. Default "onlineINMF".

Details

For performing scenario 2 or 3, a complete set of factorization result from a run of scenario 1 is required. Given the structure of a liger object, all of the required information can be retrieved automatically. Under the circumstance where users need customized information for existing factorization, arguments WInit, VInit, AInit and BInit are exposed. The requirements for these argument follows:

- HInit - A list object of matrices each of size $k \times n_i$. Number of matrices should match with newDatasets.
- WInit - A matrix object of size $m \times k$. (see runINMF for notation)
- VInit - A list object of matrices each of size $m \times k$. Number of matrices should match with newDatasets.
- AInit - A list object of matrices each of size $k \times k$. Number of matrices should match with newDatasets.
- BInit - A list object of matrices each of size $m \times k$. Number of matrices should match with newDatasets.

Minibatch iterations is performed on small subset of cells. The exact minibatch size applied on each dataset is minibatchSize multiplied by the proportion of cells in this dataset out of all cells. In general, minibatchSize should be no larger than the number of cells in the smallest dataset (considering both object and newDatasets). Therefore, a smaller value may be necessary for analyzing very small datasets.

An epoch is one completion of calculation on all cells after a number of iterations of minibatches. Therefore, the total number of iterations is determined by the setting of maxEpochs, total number of cells, and minibatchSize.

Currently, Seurat S3 method does not support working on Scenario 2 and 3, because there is no simple solution for organizing a number of miscellaneous matrices with a single Seurat object. We strongly recommend that users create a liger object which has the specific structure.

Value

- liger method - Returns updated input liger object.
  - A list of all H matrices can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "H")
  - A list of all V matrices can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "V")
  - The W matrix can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "W")
  - Meanwhile, intermediate matrices A and B produced in HALS update can also be accessed similarly.

- Seurat method - Returns updated input Seurat object.
  - H matrices for all datasets will be concatenated and transposed (all cells by k), and form a DimReduc object in the `reductions` slot named by argument `reduction`.
  - W matrix will be presented as `feature.loadings` in the same DimReduc object.
  - V matrices, A matrices, B matricesm an objective error value and the dataset variable used for the factorization is currently stored in `misc` slot of the same DimReduc object.

References

Chao Gao and et al., Iterative single-cell multi-omic integration using online learning, Nat Biotechnol., 2021

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc)
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc)
if (requireNamespace("RcppPlanc", quietly = TRUE)) {
    # Scenario 1
    pbmc <- runOnlineINMF(pbmc, minibatchSize = 200)
    # Scenario 2
    # Fake new dataset by increasing all non-zero value in "ctrl" by 1
    ctrl2 <- rawData(dataset(pbmc, "ctrl"))
    ctrl2@x <- ctrl2@x + 1
    colnames(ctrl2) <- paste0(colnames(ctrl2), 2)
    pbmc2 <- runOnlineINMF(pbmc, k = 20, newDatasets = list(ctrl2 = ctrl2),
                           minibatchSize = 100)
    # Scenario 3
    pbmc3 <- runOnlineINMF(pbmc, k = 20, newDatasets = list(ctrl2 = ctrl2),
                           projection = TRUE)
}
```

---

runPairwiseDEG *Find DEG between groups*

Description

Two methods are supported: `"pseudoBulk"` and `"wilcoxon"`. Pseudo-bulk method aggregates cells basing on biological replicates and calls bulk RNAseq DE methods, DESeq2 wald test, while Wilcoxon rank sum test is performed on single-cell level. `runPairwiseDEG()` is generally used for flexibly comparing two specific groups of cells, while `runMarkerDEG()` is used for a one-vs-rest marker test strategy.

While using pseudo-bulk method, it is generally recommended that you have these variables available in your object:

1. The cell type or cluster labeling. This can be obtained from prior study or computed with `runCluster`

2. The biological replicate labeling, most of the time the "dataset" variable automatically generated when the liger object is created. Users may use other variables if a "dataset" is merged from multiple replicates.
3. The condition labeling that reflects the study design, such as the treatment or disease status for each sample/dataset.

Please see below for detailed scenarios.

Usage

```
runPairwiseDEG(
  object,
  groupTest,
  groupCtrl,
  variable1 = NULL,
  variable2 = NULL,
  splitBy = NULL,
  method = c("pseudoBulk", "wilcoxon"),
  usePeak = FALSE,
  useReplicate = "dataset",
  nPsdRep = NULL,
  minCellPerRep = 3,
  printDiagnostic = FALSE,
  chunk = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE)
)

runMarkerDEG(
  object,
  conditionBy = NULL,
  splitBy = NULL,
  method = c("pseudoBulk", "wilcoxon"),
  useDatasets = NULL,
  usePeak = FALSE,
  useReplicate = "dataset",
  nPsdRep = NULL,
  minCellPerRep = 3,
  printDiagnostic = FALSE,
  chunk = NULL,
  seed = 1,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE)
)

runWilcoxon(
  object,
  data.use = NULL,
  compare.method = c("clusters", "datasets")
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object, with normalized data available
groupTest, groupCtrl, variable1, variable2	Condition specification. See ?runPairwiseDEG section **Pairwise DEG Scenarios** for detail.
splitBy	Name(s) of the variable(s) in cellMeta to split the comparison. See Details. Default NULL.
method	DEG test method to use. Choose from "pseudoBulk" or "wilcoxon". Default "pseudoBulk"
usePeak	Logical. Whether to use peak count instead of gene count. Only supported when ATAC datasets are involved. Default FALSE.
useReplicate	cellMeta variable of biological replicate annotation. Only used with method = "pseudoBulk". Default "dataset".
nPsdRep	Number of pseudo-replicates to create. Only used when method = "pseudoBulk". Default NULL. See Details.
minCellPerRep	Numeric, will not make pseudo-bulk for replicate with less than this number of cells. Default 3.
printDiagnostic	Logical. Whether to show more detail when verbose = TRUE. Default FALSE.
chunk	Number of features to process at a time during Wilcoxon test. Useful when memory is limited. Default NULL will process all features at once.
seed	Random seed to use for pseudo-replicate generation. Default 1.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
conditionBy	cellMeta variable(s). Marker detection will be performed for each level of this variable. Multiple variables will be combined. Default NULL uses default cluster.
useDatasets	Datasets to perform marker detection within. Default NULL will use all datasets.
data.use	Same as useDatasets.
compare.method	Choose from "clusters" (default) or "datasets". "clusters" compares each cluster against all other cells, while "datasets" run within each cluster and compare each dataset against all other datasets.

Value

A data.frame with DEG information with the all or some of the following fields:

feature	Gene names
group	Test group name. Multiple tests might be present for each function call. This is the main variable to distinguish the tests. For a pairwise test, a row with a certain group name represents the test result between the this group against the other control group; When split by a variable, it would be presented in "split.group" format, meaning the stats is by comparing the group in the split level against the control group in the same split level. When running marker detection without splitting, a row with group "a" represents the stats of the gene in group "a"

	against all other cells. When running split marker detection, the group name would be in "split.group" format, meaning the stats is by comparing the group in the split level against all other cells in the same split level.
`logFC`	Log fold change
`pval`	P-value
`padj`	Adjusted p-value
`avgExpr`	Mean expression in the test group indicated by the "group" field. Only available for wilcoxon tests.
`statistic`	Wilcoxon rank-sum test statistic. Only available for wilcoxon tests.
`auc`	Area under the ROC curve. Only available for wilcoxon tests.
`pct_in`	Percentage of cells in the test group, indicated by the "group" field, that express the feature. Only available for wilcoxon tests.
`pct_out`	Percentage of cells in the control group or other cells, as explained for the "group" field, that express the feature. Only available for wilcoxon tests.

Using Wilcoxon rank-sum test

Wilcoxon rank-sum test works for each gene and is based on the rank of the expression in each cell. LIGER provides dataset integration but does not "correct" the expression values. Projects with strong batch effects or integrate drastically different modalities should be cautious when using this method.

Comparing difference between/across cell types

Most of times, people would want to know what cell types are for each cluster after clustering. This can be done with a marker detection method that test each cluster against all the other cells. This can be done with a command like `runMarkerDEG(object, conditionBy = "cluster_var")`. When using default pseudo-bulk method, users should additionaly determine the pseudo-bulk setup parameters. If the real biological replicate variable is available, it should be supplied to argument `useReplicate`, otherwise, pseudo-replicates should be created. See "Pseudo-Replicate" section for more.

Compare between conditions

It is frequently needed to identify the difference between conditions. Users can simply set `conditionBy = "condition_var"`. However, most of time, such comparisons should be ideally done in a per-cluster manner. This can be done by setting `splitBy = "cluster_var"`. This will run a loop for each cluster, and within the group of cells, compare each condition against all other cells in the cluster.

In the scenario when users only need to compare two conditions for each cluster, running `runPairwiseDEG(object, groupTest = "condition1",groupCtrl = "condition2", variable1 = "condition_var",splitBy = "cluster_var")` would address the need.

For both use case, if pseudo-bulk (default) method is used, users should determine the pseudo-bulk setup parameters as mentioned in the previous section.

Detailed runMarkerDEG usage

Marker detection is performed in a one vs. rest manner. The grouping of such condition is specified by conditionBy, which should be a column name in cellMeta. When splitBy is specified as another variable name in cellMeta, the marker detection will be iteratively done for within each level of splitBy variable.

For example, when conditionBy = "celltype" and splitBy = NULL, marker detection will be performed by comparing all cells of "celltype_i" against all other cells, and etc. This is analogous to the old version when running runWilcoxon(method = "cluster").

When conditionBy = "gender" and splitBy = "leiden_cluster", marker detection will be performed by comparing "gender_i" cells from "cluster_j" against other cells from "cluster_j", and etc. This is analogous to the old version when running runWilcoxon(method = "dataset").

Detailed runPairwiseDEG usage

Users can select classes of cells from a variable in cellMeta. variable1 and variable2 are used to specify a column in cellMeta, and groupTest and groupCtrl are used to specify existing classes from variable1 and variable2, respectively. When variable2 is missing, groupCtrl will be considered from variable1.

For example, when variable1 = "celltype" and variable2 = NULL, groupTest and groupCtrl should be valid cell types in object$celltype.

When variable1 is "celltype" and variable2 is "gender", groupTest should be a valid cell type from object$celltype and groupCtrl should be a valid class from object$gender.

When both variable1 and variable2 are missing, groupTest and groupCtrl should be valid index of cells in object.

Pseudo-Replicate

Pseudo-replicate assignment is a technique to complement the lack of real biological replicates when using pseudo-bulk DE methods. LIGER's pseudo-bulk method generally requires that each comparison group has at least 3 replicates each composed of at least 3 cells, in order to ensure the statistic power. When less than 3 real replicates are found for a comparison, the default setting (nPsdRep = NULL) splits each into 3 pseudo-replicates, otherwise no pseudo-replicates are automatically generated. When nPsdRep is given a number, LIGER will always go through each comparison group and split each real replicate into the given number of pseudo-replicates.

Examples

```
pbmc$leiden_cluster <- pbmcPlot$leiden_cluster

# Identify cluster markers
degStats1 <- runMarkerDEG(pbmc, conditionBy = "leiden_cluster")

# Compare "stim" data against "ctrl" data within each cluster
degStats3 <- runPairwiseDEG(pbmc, groupTest = "stim", groupCtrl = "ctrl",
                            variable1 = "dataset",
                            splitBy = "leiden_cluster",
                            minCellPerRep = 4)
```

runTSNE *Perform t-SNE dimensionality reduction*

Description

Runs t-SNE on the aligned cell factors (result from `alignFactors`), or unaligned cell factors (result from `runIntegration`)) to generate a 2D embedding for visualization. By default `Rtsne` (Barnes-Hut implementation of t-SNE) method is invoked, while alternative "fftRtsne" method (FFT-accelerated Interpolation-based t-SNE, using Kluger Lab implementation) is also supported. For very large datasets, it is recommended to use `method = "fftRtsne"` due to its efficiency and scalability.

Extra external installation steps are required for using "fftRtsne" method. Please consult detailed guide.

Usage

```
runTSNE(
  object,
  useRaw = NULL,
  useDims = NULL,
  nDims = 2,
  usePCA = FALSE,
  perplexity = 30,
  theta = 0.5,
  method = c("Rtsne", "fftRtsne"),
  dimredName = "TSNE",
  asDefault = NULL,
  fitsnePath = NULL,
  seed = 42,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  k = nDims,
  use.raw = useRaw,
  dims.use = useDims,
  use.pca = usePCA,
  fitsne.path = fitsnePath,
  rand.seed = seed
)
```

Arguments

`object`	liger object with factorization results.
`useRaw`	Whether to use un-aligned cell factor loadings (H matrices). Default `NULL` search for aligned factor loadings first and un-aligned loadings then.
`useDims`	Index of factors to use for computing the embedding. Default `NULL` uses all factors.
`nDims`	Number of dimensions to reduce to. Default 2.

usePCA	Whether to perform initial PCA step for Rtsne. Default FALSE.
perplexity	Numeric parameter to pass to Rtsne (expected number of neighbors). Default 30.
theta	Speed/accuracy trade-off (increase for less accuracy), set to 0.0 for exact TSNE. Default 0.5.
method	Choose from "Rtsne" or "fftRtsne". See Description. Default "Rtsne".
dimredName	Name of the variable in cellMeta slot to store the result matrix. Default "TSNE".
asDefault	Logical, whether to set the resulting dimRed as default for visualization. Default NULL will set it when no default is set.
fitsnePath	Path to the cloned FIt-SNE directory (i.e. '/path/to/dir/FIt-SNE'). Required only when first time using runTSNE with method = "fftRtsne". Default NULL.
seed	Random seed for reproducibility. Default 42.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
use.raw, dims.use, k, use.pca, fitsne.path, rand.seed	**Deprecated**. See Usage section for replacement.

Value

The object where a "TSNE" variable is updated in the cellMeta slot with the whole 2D embedding matrix.

See Also

runUMAP

Examples

```
pbmc <- runTSNE(pbmcPlot)
```

---

runUINMF *Perform Mosaic iNMF (UINMF) on scaled datasets with unshared features*

Description

Performs mosaic integrative non-negative matrix factorization (UINMF) (A.R. Kriebel, 2022) using block coordinate descent (alternating non-negative least squares, ANLS) to return factorized H, W, V and U matrices. The objective function is stated as

$$\arg \min_{H\geq 0, W\geq 0, V\geq 0, U\geq 0} \sum_{i}^{d} || \begin{bmatrix} E_i \\ P_i \end{bmatrix} - (\begin{bmatrix} W \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} V_i \\ U_i \end{bmatrix}) Hi||_F^2 + \lambda_i \sum_{i}^{d} || \begin{bmatrix} V_i \\ U_i \end{bmatrix} H_i||_F^2$$

where E_i is the input non-negative matrix of the i'th dataset, P_i is the input non-negative matrix for the unshared features, d is the total number of datasets. E_i is of size $m \times n_i$ for m shared features and n_i cells, P_i is of size $u_i \times n_i$ for u_i unshared feaetures, H_i is of size $k \times n_i$, V_i is of size $m \times k$, W is of size $m \times k$ and U_i is of size $u_i \times k$.

The factorization produces a shared W matrix (genes by k). For each dataset, an H matrix (k by cells), a V matrix (genes by k) and a U matrix (unshared genes by k). The H matrices represent the cell factor loadings. W is held consistent among all datasets, as it represents the shared components of the metagenes across datasets. The V matrices represent the dataset-specific components of the metagenes, U matrices are similar to Vs but represents the loading contributed by unshared features.

This function adopts highly optimized fast and memory efficient implementation extended from Planc (Kannan, 2016). Pre-installation of extension package `RcppPlanc` is required. The underlying algorithm adopts the identical ANLS strategy as `optimizeALS(unshared = TRUE)` in the old version of LIGER.

Usage

```
runUINMF(object, k = 20, lambda = 5, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
runUINMF(
  object,
  k = 20,
  lambda = 5,
  nIteration = 30,
  nRandomStarts = 1,
  seed = 1,
  nCores = 2L,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`object`	liger object. Should run `selectGenes` with `unshared = TRUE` and then run `scaleNotCenter` in advance.
`k`	Inner dimension of factorization (number of factors). Generally, a higher `k` will be needed for datasets with more sub-structure. Default `20`.
`lambda`	Regularization parameter. Larger values penalize dataset-specific effects more strongly (i.e. alignment should increase as `lambda` increases). Default `5`.
`...`	Arguments passed to other methods and wrapped functions.
`nIteration`	Total number of block coordinate descent iterations to perform. Default `30`.
`nRandomStarts`	Number of restarts to perform (iNMF objective function is non-convex, so taking the best objective from multiple successive initialization is recommended). For easier reproducibility, this increments the random seed by 1 for each consecutive restart, so future factorization of the same dataset can be run with one rep if necessary. Default `1`.
`seed`	Random seed to allow reproducible results. Default `1`.

nCores	The number of parallel tasks to speed up the computation. Default 2L. Only supported for platform with OpenMP support.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.

Value

- liger method - Returns updated input liger object.
  - A list of all H matrices can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "H")
  - A list of all V matrices can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "V")
  - The W matrix can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "W")
  - A list of all U matrices can be accessed with getMatrix(object, "U")

Note

Currently, Seurat S3 method is not supported for UINMF because there is no simple solution for organizing a number of miscellaneous matrices with a single Seurat object. We strongly recommend that users create a liger object which has the specific structure.

References

April R. Kriebel and Joshua D. Welch, UINMF performs mosaic integration of single-cell multi-omic datasets using nonnegative matrix factorization, Nat. Comm., 2022

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc, useUnsharedDatasets = c("ctrl", "stim"))
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc)
if (!is.null(getMatrix(pbmc, "scaleUnsharedData", "ctrl")) &&
    !is.null(getMatrix(pbmc, "scaleUnsharedData", "stim"))) {
    # TODO: unshared variable features cannot be detected from this example
    pbmc <- runUINMF(pbmc)
}
```

---

runUMAP *Perform UMAP Dimensionality Reduction*

Description

Run UMAP on the aligned cell factors (result from alignFactors), or unaligned cell factors (raw result from runIntegration)) to generate a 2D embedding for visualization (or general dimensionality reduction). Has option to run on subset of factors. It is generally recommended to use this method for dimensionality reduction with extremely large datasets. The underlying UMAP calculation imports uwot umap.

Usage

```
runUMAP(
  object,
  useRaw = NULL,
  useDims = NULL,
  nDims = 2,
  distance = c("cosine", "euclidean", "manhattan", "hamming"),
  nNeighbors = 20,
  minDist = 0.1,
  dimredName = "UMAP",
  asDefault = NULL,
  seed = 42,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  k = nDims,
  use.raw = useRaw,
  dims.use = useDims,
  n_neighbors = nNeighbors,
  min_dist = minDist,
  rand.seed = seed,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	liger object with factorization results.
useRaw	Whether to use un-aligned cell factor loadings (H matrices). Default NULL search for aligned factor loadings first and un-aligned loadings then.
useDims	Index of factors to use for computing the embedding. Default NULL uses all factors.
nDims	Number of dimensions to reduce to. Default 2.
distance	Character. Metric used to measure distance in the input space. Default "cosine", alternative options include: "euclidean", "manhattan" and "hamming".
nNeighbors	Number of neighboring points used in local approximations of manifold structure. Default 20.
minDist	Numeric. Controls how tightly the embedding is allowed compress points together. Default 0.1.
dimredName	Name of the variable in cellMeta slot to store the result matrix. Default "UMAP".
asDefault	Logical, whether to set the resulting dimRed as default for visualization. Default NULL will set it when no default is set.
seed	Random seed for reproducibility. Default 42.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
k, use.raw, dims.use, n_neighbors, min_dist, rand.seed	**Deprecated**. See Usage section for replacement.
...	Additional argument passed to uwot::umap().

Details

For nNeighbors, larger values will result in more global structure being preserved at the loss of detailed local structure. In general this parameter should often be in the range 5 to 50, with a choice of 10 to 15 being a sensible default.

For minDist, larger values ensure embedded points are more evenly distributed, while smaller values allow the algorithm to optimize more accurately with regard to local structure. Sensible values are in the range 0.001 to 0.5, with 0.1 being a reasonable default.

Value

The object where a "UMAP" variable is updated in the cellMeta slot with the whole 2D embedding matrix.

See Also

runTSNE

Examples

```
pbmc <- runUMAP(pbmcPlot)
```

---

scaleNotCenter *Scale genes by root-mean-square across cells*

Description

This function scales normalized gene expression data after variable genes have been selected. We do not mean-center the data before scaling in order to address the non-negativity constraint of NMF. Computation applied to each normalized dataset matrix can form the following equation:

$$S_{i,j} = \frac{N_{i,j}}{\sqrt{\sum_p^n \frac{N_{i,p}^2}{n-1}}}$$

Where N denotes the normalized matrix for an individual dataset, S is the output scaled matrix for this dataset, and n is the number of cells in this dataset. i, j denotes the specific gene and cell index, and p is the cell iterator.

Please see detailed section below for explanation on methylation dataset.

Usage

```
scaleNotCenter(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'dgCMatrix'
scaleNotCenter(object, features, scaleFactor = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class 'DelayedArray'
```

```
scaleNotCenter(
  object,
  features,
  scaleFactor = NULL,
  geneRootMeanSq = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  chunk = getOption("ligerChunkSize", 20000),
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'ligerDataset'
scaleNotCenter(
  object,
  features = NULL,
  scaleFactor = NULL,
  chunk = getOption("ligerChunkSize", 20000),
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'ligerMethDataset'
scaleNotCenter(
  object,
  features = NULL,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
scaleNotCenter(
  object,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  features = varFeatures(object),
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  remove.missing = NULL,
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
scaleNotCenter(
  object,
  assay = NULL,
  layer = "ligerNormData",
  save = "ligerScaleData",
  datasetVar = "orig.ident",
  features = NULL,
  ...
```

)

Arguments

object	liger object, ligerDataset object, dgCMatrix-class object, or a Seurat object.
...	Arguments passed to other methods. The order goes by: "liger" method calls "ligerDataset" method", which then calls "dgCMatrix" method. "Seurat" method directly calls "dgCMatrix" method.
features	Character, numeric or logical index that choose the variable feature to be scaled. "liger" method by default uses varFeatures(object). "ligerDataset" method by default uses all features. "Seurat" method by default uses Seurat::VariableFeatures(object).
scaleFactor	Numeric vector of scaling factor to normalize the raw counts to unit sum. This pre-calculated at liger object creation (stored as object$nUMI and internally specified in S3 method chains, thus is generally not needed to be specified by users.
geneRootMeanSq	Numeric vector of root-mean-square of unit-normalized expression for each gene. This is pre-calculated at the call of selectBatchHVG (stored at featureMeta(dataset(object, "datasetName"))$rootMeanSq and internally specified in S3 method chains, thus is generally not needed to be specified by users.
overwrite	Logical. When writing newly computed HDF5 array to a separate HDF5 file, whether to overwrite the existing file. Default FALSE raises an error when the file already exists.
chunk	Integer. Number of maximum number of cells in each chunk, when scaling is applied to any HDF5 based dataset. Default 20000.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
useDatasets	A character vector of the names, a numeric or logical vector of the index of the datasets to be scaled but not centered. Default NULL applies to all datasets.
remove.missing	**Deprecated**. The functionality of this is covered through other parts of the whole workflow and is no long needed. Will be ignored if specified.
assay	Name of assay to use. Default NULL uses current active assay.
layer	For Seurat>=4.9.9, the name of layer to retrieve normalized data. Default "ligerNormData". For older Seurat, always retrieve from data slot.
save	For Seurat>=4.9.9, the name of layer to store normalized data. Default "ligerScaleData". For older Seurat, stored to scale.data slot.
datasetVar	Metadata variable name that stores the dataset source annotation. Default "orig.ident".

Value

Updated object

- dgCMatrix method - Returns scaled dgCMatrix object
- ligerDataset method - Updates the scaleData and scaledUnsharedData (if unshared variable feature available) slot of the object

- liger method - Updates the `scaleData` and `scaledUnsharedData` (if unshared variable feature available) slot of chosen datasets
- Seurat method - Adds a named layer in chosen assay (V5), or update the `scale.data` slot of the chosen assay (<=V4)

Methylation dataset

Because gene body mCH proportions are negatively correlated with gene expression level in neurons, we need to reverse the direction of the methylation data before performing the integration. We do this by simply subtracting all values from the maximum methylation value. The resulting values are positively correlated with gene expression. This will only be applied to variable genes detected in prior. Please make sure that argument `modal` is set accordingly when running `createLiger`. In this way, this function can automatically detect it and take proper action. If it is not set, users can still manually have the equivalent processing done by doing `scaleNotCenter(lig, useDataset = c("other", "datasets"))`, and then `reverseMethData(lig, useDataset = c("meth", "datasets"))`.

Note

Since the scaling on genes is applied on a per dataset base, other scaling methods that apply to a whole concatenated matrix of multiple datasets might not be considered as equivalent alternatives, even if options like `center` are set to `FALSE`. Hence we implemented an efficient solution that works under such circumstance, provided with the Seurat S3 method.

Examples

```
pbmc <- selectBatchHVG(pbmc, n = 10)
pbmc <- scaleNotCenter(pbmc)
```

`selectBatchHVG` **[Experimental]** *Batch-aware highly variable gene selection*

Description

Method to select HVGs based on mean dispersions of genes that are highly variable genes in all batches. Using a the top target_genes per batch by average normalize dispersion. If target genes still hasn't been reached, then HVGs in all but one batches are used to fill up. This is continued until HVGs in a single batch are considered.

This is an *rliger* implementation of the method originally published in SCIB. We found the potential that it can improve integration under some circumstances, and is currently testing it.

This function currently only works for shared features across all datasets. For selection from only part of the datasets and selection for dataset-specific unshared features, please use `selectGenes()`.

Usage

```
selectBatchHVG(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
selectBatchHVG(
  object,
  nGenes = 2000,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'ligerDataset'
selectBatchHVG(
  object,
  nGenes = 2000,
  features = NULL,
  scaleFactor = NULL,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'dgCMatrix'
selectBatchHVG(
  object,
  nGenes = 2000,
  returnStats = FALSE,
  scaleFactor = NULL,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'DelayedArray'
selectBatchHVG(
  object,
  nGenes = 2000,
  means = NULL,
  scaleFactor = NULL,
  returnStats = FALSE,
  chunk = getOption("ligerChunkSize", 20000),
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object, ligerDataset object or a sparse/dense matrix. The liger objects must have raw counts available. A direct matrix input is preferably log-1p transformed from CPM normalized counts in cell per column orientation.

...	Arguments passed to S3 methods.
nGenes	Integer number of target genes to select. Default 2000.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show a progress bar. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
features	For ligerDataset method, the feature subset to limit the selection to, mainly for limiting the selection to happen within the shared genes of all datasets. Default NULL selects from all features in the ligerDataset object.
scaleFactor	Numeric vector of scaling factor to normalize the raw counts to unit sum. This pre-calculated at liger object creation (stored as object$nUMI and internally specified in S3 method chains, thus is generally not needed to be specified by users.
returnStats	Logical, for dgCMatrix-method, whether to return a data frame of statistics for all features, or by default FALSE just return a character vector of selected features.
means	Numeric vector of pre-calculated means per gene, derived from log1p CPM normalized expression.
chunk	Integer. Number of maximum number of cells in each chunk when working on HDF5Array Default 20000.

Value

- liger-method: Returns the input liger object with the selected genes updated in varFeatures slot, which can be accessed with varFeatures(object). Additionally, the statistics are updated in the featureMeta slot of each ligerDataset object within the datasets slot of the object.
- ligerDataset-method: Returns the input ligerDataset object with the statistics updated in the featureMeta slot.
- dgCMatrix-method: By default returns a character vector of selected variable features. If returnStats = TRUE, returns a data.frame of the statistics.

References

Luecken, M.D., Büttner, M., Chaichoompu, K. et al. (2022), Benchmarking atlas-level data integration in single-cell genomics. *Nat Methods*, 19, 41–50. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41592-021-01336-8.

See Also

selectGenes()

Examples

```
pbmc <- selectBatchHVG(pbmc, nGenes = 10)
varFeatures(pbmc)
```

`selectGenes` *Select a subset of informative genes*

Description

This function identifies highly variable genes from each dataset and combines these gene sets (either by union or intersection) for use in downstream analysis. Assuming that gene expression approximately follows a Poisson distribution, this function identifies genes with gene expression variance above a given variance threshold (relative to mean gene expression). Alternatively, we allow selecting a desired number of genes for each dataset by ranking the relative variance, and then take the combination.

Usage

```
selectGenes(object, thresh = 0.1, nGenes = NULL, alpha = 0.99, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
selectGenes(
  object,
  thresh = 0.1,
  nGenes = NULL,
  alpha = 0.99,
  useDatasets = NULL,
  useUnsharedDatasets = NULL,
  unsharedThresh = 0.1,
  combine = c("union", "intersection"),
  chunk = getOption("ligerChunkSize", 20000),
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  var.thresh = thresh,
  alpha.thresh = alpha,
  num.genes = nGenes,
  datasets.use = useDatasets,
  unshared.datasets = useUnsharedDatasets,
  unshared.thresh = unsharedThresh,
  tol = NULL,
  do.plot = NULL,
  cex.use = NULL,
  unshared = NULL,
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
selectGenes(
  object,
  thresh = 0.1,
  nGenes = NULL,
  alpha = 0.99,
```

```
  useDatasets = NULL,
  layer = "ligerNormData",
  assay = NULL,
  datasetVar = "orig.ident",
  combine = c("union", "intersection"),
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger, ligerDataset or Seurat object, with normalized data available (no scale factor multipled nor log transformed).
thresh	Variance threshold used to identify variable genes. Higher threshold results in fewer selected genes. Liger and Seurat S3 methods accept a single value or a vector with specific threshold for each dataset in useDatasets.* Default 0.1.
nGenes	Number of genes to find for each dataset. By setting this, we optimize the threshold used for each dataset so that we get nGenes selected features for each dataset. Accepts single value or a vector for dataset specific setting matching useDataset.* Default NULL does not optimize.
alpha	Alpha threshold. Controls upper bound for expected mean gene expression. Lower threshold means higher upper bound. Default 0.99.
...	Arguments passed to other methods.
useDatasets	A character vector of the names, a numeric or logical vector of the index of the datasets to use for shared variable feature selection. Default NULL uses all datasets.
useUnsharedDatasets	A character vector of the names, a numeric or logical vector of the index of the datasets to use for finding unshared variable features. Default NULL does not attempt to find unshared features.
unsharedThresh	The same thing as thresh that is applied to test unshared features. A single value for all datasets in useUnsharedDatasets or a vector for dataset-specific setting.* Default 0.1.
combine	How to combine variable genes selected from all datasets. Choose from "union" or "intersection". Default "union".
chunk	Integer. Number of maximum number of cells in each chunk, when gene selection is applied to any HDF5 based dataset. Default 20000.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
var.thresh, alpha.thresh, num.genes, datasets.use, unshared.datasets, unshared.thresh	**Deprecated**. These arguments are renamed and will be removed in the future. Please see function usage for replacement.
tol, do.plot, cex.use, unshared	**Deprecated**. Gene variability metric is now visualized with separated function plotVarFeatures. Users can now set none-NULL useUnsharedDatasets to select unshared genes, instead of having to switch unshared on.

layer	Where the input normalized counts should be from. Default "ligerNormData". For older Seurat, always retrieve from data slot.
assay	Name of assay to use. Default NULL uses current active assay.
datasetVar	Metadata variable name that stores the dataset source annotation. Default "orig.ident".

Value

Updated object

- liger method - Each involved dataset stored in ligerDataset is updated with its featureMeta slot and varUnsharedFeatures slot (if requested with useUnsharedDatasets), while varFeatures(object) will be updated with the final combined gene set.
- Seurat method - Final selection will be updated at Seurat::VariableFeatures(object). Per-dataset information is stored in the meta.features slot of the chosen Assay.

Examples

```
pbmc <- normalize(pbmc)
# Select basing on thresholding the relative variance
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc, thresh = .1)
# Select specified number for each dataset
pbmc <- selectGenes(pbmc, nGenes = c(60, 60))
```

---

selectGenesVST *Select variable genes from one dataset with Seurat VST method*

Description

Seurat FindVariableFeatures VST method. This allows the selection of a fixed number of variable features, but only applies to one dataset. No normalization is needed in advance.

Usage

```
selectGenesVST(
  object,
  useDataset,
  n = 2000,
  loessSpan = 0.3,
  clipMax = "auto",
  useShared = TRUE,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE)
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger object.
useDataset	The names, a numeric or logical index of the dataset to be considered for selection.
n	Number of variable features needed. Default 2000.
loessSpan	Loess span parameter used when fitting the variance-mean relationship. Default 0.3.
clipMax	After standardization values larger than clipMax will be set to clipMax. Default "auto" sets this value to the square root of the number of cells.
useShared	Logical. Whether to only select from genes shared by all dataset. Default TRUE.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.

References

Seurat::FindVariableFeatures.default(selection.method = "vst")

Examples

```
pbmc <- selectGenesVST(pbmc, "ctrl", n = 50)
```

---

sub-liger *Subset liger with brackets*

Description

Subset liger with brackets

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'
x[i, j, ...]
```

Arguments

x	A liger object
i	Feature subscriptor, passed to featureIdx of subsetLiger.
j	Cell subscriptor, passed to cellIdx of subsetLiger.
...	Additional arguments passed to subsetLiger.

Value

Subset of x with specified features and cells.

See Also

subsetLiger

Examples

```
pbmcPlot[varFeatures(pbmcPlot)[1:10], 1:10]
```

`sub-ligerDataset` *Subset ligerDataset object*

Description

Subset ligerDataset object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'ligerDataset'
x[i, j, ...]
```

Arguments

`x`	A ligerDataset object
`i`	Numeric, logical index or character vector of feature names to subscribe. Leave missing for all features.
`j`	Numeric, logical index or character vector of cell IDs to subscribe. Leave missing for all cells.
`...`	Additional arguments passed to `subsetLigerDataset`.

Value

If `i` is given, the selected metadata will be returned; if it is missing, the whole cell metadata table in `S4Vectors::DataFrame` class will be returned.

Examples

```
ctrl <- dataset(pbmc, "ctrl")
ctrl[1:5, 1:5]
```

sub-sub-liger *Get cell metadata variable*

Description

Get cell metadata variable

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'
x[[i, ...]]
```

Arguments

x	A liger object
i	Name or numeric index of cell meta data to fetch
...	Anything that S4Vectors::DataFrame method allows.

Value

If i is given, the selected metadata will be returned; if it is missing, the whole cell metadata table in S4Vectors::DataFrame class will be returned.

Examples

```
# Retrieve whole cellMeta
pbmc[[]]
# Retrieve a variable
pbmc[["dataset"]]
```

subsetLiger *Subset liger object*

Description

This function subsets a liger object with character feature index and any valid cell index. For datasets based on HDF5, the filenames of subset H5 files could only be automatically generated for now. Feature subsetting is based on the intersection of available features from datasets involved by cellIdx, while featureIdx = NULL does not take the intersection (i.e. nothing done on the feature axis).

a ligerDataset object is also allowed for now and meanwhile, setting filename is supported.

Usage

```
subsetLiger(
  object,
  featureIdx = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  useSlot = NULL,
  chunkSize = 1000,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  newH5 = TRUE,
  returnObject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	A liger or ligerDataset object.
featureIdx	Character vector. Missing or NULL for all features.
cellIdx	Character, logical or numeric index that can subscribe cells. Missing or NULL for all cells.
useSlot	The slot(s) to only consider. Choose one or more from "rawData", "normData" and "scaleData". Default NULL subsets the whole object including analysis result matrices.
chunkSize	Integer. Number of maximum number of cells in each chunk, Default 1000.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
newH5	Whether to create new H5 files on disk for the subset datasets if involved datasets in the object is HDF5 based. TRUE writes a new ones, FALSE returns in memory data.
returnObject	Logical, whether to return a liger object for result. Default TRUE. FALSE returns a list containing requested values.
...	Arguments passed to subsetLigerDataset

Value

Subset object

See Also

subsetLigerDataset

Examples

```
pbmc.small <- subsetLiger(pbmc, cellIdx = pbmc$nUMI > 200)
pbmc.small <- pbmc[, pbmc$nGene > 50]
```

subsetLigerDataset *Subset ligerDataset object*

Description

This function subsets a ligerDataset object with valid feature and cell indices. For HDF5 based object, options are available for subsetting data into memory or a new on-disk H5 file. Feature and cell subscription is always based on the size of rawData. Therefore, the feature subsetting on scaled data, which usually contains already a subset of features, will select the intersection between the wanted features and the set available from scaled data.

Usage

```
subsetLigerDataset(
  object,
  featureIdx = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  useSlot = NULL,
  newH5 = TRUE,
  filename = NULL,
  filenameSuffix = NULL,
  chunkSize = 1000,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  returnObject = TRUE,
  ...
)

subsetH5LigerDataset(
  object,
  featureIdx = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  useSlot = NULL,
  newH5 = TRUE,
  filename = NULL,
  filenameSuffix = NULL,
  chunkSize = 1000,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  returnObject = TRUE
)

subsetMemLigerDataset(
  object,
  featureIdx = NULL,
  cellIdx = NULL,
  useSlot = NULL,
  returnObject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

object	ligerDataset object. HDF5 based object if using subsetH5LigerDataset, in-memory data for subsetMemLigerDataset.
featureIdx	Character, logical or numeric index that can subscribe features. Missing or NULL for all features.
cellIdx	Character, logical or numeric index that can subscribe cells. Missing or NULL for all cells.
useSlot	The slot(s) to only consider. Choose one or more from "rawData", "normData" and "scaleData". Default NULL subsets the whole object including analysis result matrices.
newH5	Whether to create a new H5 file on disk for the subset dataset if object is HDF5 based. TRUE writes a new one, FALSE returns in memory data.
filename	Filename of the new H5 file if being created. Default NULL adds suffix ".subset_{yymmdd_HHMMSS}.h5" to the original name.
filenameSuffix	Instead of specifying the exact filename, set a suffix for the new files so the new filename looks like original.h5.[suffix].h5. Default NULL.
chunkSize	Integer. Number of maximum number of cells in each chunk, Default 1000.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default getOption("ligerVerbose") or TRUE if users have not set.
returnObject	Logical, whether to return a ligerDataset object for result. Default TRUE. FALSE returns a list containing requested values.
...	Arguments passed to subsetH5LigerDataset

Value

Subset object

Examples

```
ctrl <- dataset(pbmc, "ctrl")
ctrl.small <- subsetLigerDataset(ctrl, cellIdx = 1:5)
ctrl.tiny <- ctrl[1:5, 1:5]
```

---

suggestK **[Experimental]** *Suggest optimal K value for the factorization*

Description

This function sweeps through a series of k values (number of ranks the datasets are factorized into). For each k value, it repeats the factorization for a number of random starts and obtains the objective errors from each run. The optimal k value is recommended to be the one with the lowest variance.

We are currently actively testing the methodology and the function is subject to change. Please report any issues you encounter.

Currently we have identified that a wider step of k values (e.g. 5, 10, 15, ...) shows a more stable variance than a narrower step (e.g. 5, 6, 7, ...).

Note that this function is supposed to take a long time when a larger number of random starts is requested (e.g. 50) for a robust suggestion. It is safe to interrupt the progress (e.g. Ctrl+C) and the function will still return the recorded objective errors already completed.

Usage

```
suggestK(
  object,
  kTest = seq(5, 50, 5),
  nRandomStart = 10,
  lambda = 5,
  nIteration = 30,
  nCores = 1L,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE)
)
```

Arguments

`object`	A liger object.
`kTest`	A numeric vector of k values to be tested. Default 5, 10, 15, ..., 50.
`nRandomStart`	Number of random starts for each k value. Default `10`.
`lambda`	Regularization parameter. Default `5`.
`nIteration`	Number of iterations for each run. Default `30`.
`nCores`	Number of cores to use for each run. Default `1L`.
`verbose`	Whether to print progress messages. Default `TRUE`.

Value

A list containing:

`stats`	A data frame containing the k values, objective errors, and random starts.
`figure`	A ggplot2 object showing the objective errors and variance for each k value. The left y-axis corresponds to the dots and bands, the right second y-axis maps to the blue line that stands for the variance.

Examples

```
pbmcPlot <- scaleNotCenter(pbmcPlot)
# Minimum test example, not for demonstrative recommendation
suggests <- suggestK(
    object = pbmcPlot,
    kTest = c(2, 3),
    nRandomStart = 2,
    nIteration = 2
)
suggests$figure
```

summary.factorGSEA *Show significant results from factorGSEA*

Description

Show significant results from factorGSEA

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'factorGSEA'
summary(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	A factorGSEA object.
...	S3 method convention, not used for now.

Value

A data frame of significant tests with gene set names, factor names and other GSEA statistics.

updateLigerObject *Update old liger object to up-to-date structure*

Description

Due to massive updates since rliger 2.0, old liger object structures are no longer compatible with the current package. This function will update the object to the latest structure.

Usage

```
updateLigerObject(
  object,
  dimredName,
  clusterName = "clusters",
  h5FilePath = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	An object of any version of rliger
dimredName	Name of the dimension reduction embedding to be stored. Please see Details section.
clusterName	Name of the clustering assignment variable to be stored. Please see Details section.

h5FilePath — Named character vector for all H5 file paths. Not required for object run with in-memory analysis. For object containing H5-based analysis (e.g. online iNMF), this must be supplied if the H5 file location is different from that at creation time.

Details

Old liger object (<1.99.0) stores only one embedding at slot `tsne.coords`. `dimredName` must be specified as a single character. Pre-release version (1.99.0) stores multiple embeddings in `cellMeta`. `dimredName` must be exact existing variable names in `cellMeta` slot.

Old liger object stores clustering assignment in slot `clusters`. `clusterName` must be specified as a single character. Pre-release version does not require this.

Value

Updated liger object.

Examples

```
## Not run:
# Suppose you have a liger object of old version (<1.99.0)
newLig <- updateLigerObject(oldLig,
                            dimredName = "UMAP",
                            clusterName = "louvain")

## End(Not run)
```

---

writeH5 — *Write in-memory data into H5 file*

Description

This function writes in-memory data into H5 file by default in 10x cellranger HDF5 output format. The main goal of this function is to allow users to integrate large H5-based dataset, that cannot be fully loaded into memory, with other data already loaded in memory using `runOnlineINMF`. In this case, users can write the smaller in-memory data to H5 file instead of loading subset of the large H5-based dataset into memory, where information might be lost.

Basing on the goal of the whole workflow, the data will always be written in a CSC matrix format and colnames/rownames are always required.

The default method coerces the input to a dgCMatrix-class object. Methods for other container classes tries to extract proper data and calls the default method.

Usage

```
writeH5(x, file, ...)

## Default S3 method:
writeH5(x, file, ...)

## S3 method for class 'dgCMatrix'
writeH5(
  x,
  file,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  indicesPath = "matrix/indices",
  indptrPath = "matrix/indptr",
  dataPath = "matrix/data",
  shapePath = "matrix/shape",
  barcodesPath = "matrix/barcodes",
  featuresPath = "matrix/features/name",
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'ligerDataset'
writeH5(x, file, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
writeH5(x, file, useDatasets, ...)
```

Arguments

x	An object with in-memory data to be written into H5 file.
file	A character string of the file path to be written.
...	Arguments passed to other S3 methods.
overwrite	Logical, whether to overwrite the file if it already exists. Default FALSE.
indicesPath, indptrPath, dataPath	The paths inside the H5 file where the dgCMatrix-class constructor i, p, and x will be written to, respectively. Default using cellranger convention "matrix/indices", "matrix/indptr", and "matrix/data".
shapePath	The path inside the H5 file where the shape of the matrix will be written to. Default "matrix/shape".
barcodesPath	The path inside the H5 file where the barcodes/colnames will be written to. Default "matrix/barcodes". Skipped if the object does not have colnames.
featuresPath	The path inside the H5 file where the features/rownames will be written to. Default "matrix/features/name". Skipped if the object does not have rownames.
useDatasets	For liger method. Names or indices of datasets to be written to H5 files. Required.

Value

Nothing is returned. H5 file will be created on disk.

See Also

10X cellranger H5 matrix detail

Examples

```
raw <- rawData(pbmc, "ctrl")
writeH5(raw, tempfile(pattern = "ctrl_", fileext = ".h5"))
```

`writeH5AD` *Write liger object to H5AD files*

Description

Create an H5AD file from a liger object. This function writes only raw counts to `adata.X`, while normalized and scaled expression data will not be written, because LIGER use different normalization and scaling strategy than most of the other tools utilizing H5AD format.

Supports for single sparse matrices or internal ligerDataset objects are also provided if there is a need to convert single datasets.

Usage

```
writeH5AD(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'dgCMatrix'
writeH5AD(
  object,
  filename,
  obs = NULL,
  var = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'ligerDataset'
writeH5AD(
  object,
  filename,
  obs = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'
writeH5AD(
  object,
  filename,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  verbose = getOption("ligerVerbose", TRUE),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	One of liger, ligerDataset or dgCMatrix-class object.
...	Arguments passed down to S3 methods
filename	A character string, the path to the H5AD file to be written
obs	External data.frame that contains metadata of the cells but does not embed inside the object. Rownames must be identical to the colnames of object.
var	External data.frame that contains metadata of the features but does not embed inside the object. Rownames must be identical to the rownames of object.
overwrite	Logical, whether to overwrite the file if it exists.
verbose	Logical. Whether to show information of the progress. Default `getOption("ligerVerbose")` which is `TRUE` if users have not set.

Value

No return value, an H5AD file is written to disk with the following specification, assuming the file is loaded to `adata` in Python:

- `adata.X` - Raw count CSR matrix, outer joined with all datasets
- `adata.obs` - Cell metadata, with exactly same content of `cellMeta(object)`
- `adata.var` - Feature metadata containing only the feature names as the index of `pd.DataFrame`.
- `adata.obsm['X_inmf_aligned']` - The integrated embedding, aligned cell factor loading matrix, the primary output of LIGER, if available.
- `adata.obsm['X_inmf']` - The raw cell factor loading matrix, if available.
- `adata.obsm['<dimRedName>']` - The dimensional reduction matrix, such as UMAP or TSNE, if available.
- `adata.uns['inmf']['W']` - The shared factor feature loading matrix, if available.
- `adata.uns['inmf']['V']['<datasetName>']` - The dataset-specific factor feature loading matrix, if available.
- `adata.uns['inmf']['features']` - The variable features being used for factorization, supposed to match to the second shape of W and V, if available.
- `adata.uns['inmf']['lambda']` - The hyperparameter lambda used, the regularization parameter for the factorization, if available.
- `adata.uns['inmf']['k']` - The number of factors used for the factorization, if available.

Examples

```
print("The example below works, but causes PDF manual rendering issue for some reason")
## Not run:
writeH5AD(pbmc, filename = tempfile(fileext = ".h5ad"))

## End(Not run)
```

Index

∗ **datasets**
bmmc, 19
ccGeneHuman, 28
deg.marker, 38
deg.pw, 39
pbmc, 90
pbmcPlot, 91
.complexHeatmapDotPlot, 5, *97*, *99*
.ggCellViolin, 6, *95*, *114*
.ggScatter, 10, *93*, *106*, *112*, *118*, *130*, *133*
.ggplotLigerTheme, 7, *7*, *11*, *93*, *95*, *100*, *103*, *106*, *112*, *114*, *116*, *118*, *124*, *126*, *130*, *132*, *133*
.plotHeatmap, 12, *110*, *120*, *122*
[.liger *(*sub-liger*)*, 190
[.ligerDataset *(*sub-ligerDataset*)*, 191
[[.liger *(*sub-sub-liger*)*, 192
[[<-.liger *(*liger-class*)*, 52
$.liger *(*liger-class*)*, 52
$<-.liger *(*liger-class*)*, 52

alignFactors, 14, *20*, *21*, *59*, *156*, *176*, *179*
as.data.frame, *58*
as.liger, *17*
as.liger *(*as.liger.dgCMatrix*)*, 15
as.liger.dgCMatrix, 15
as.ligerDataset *(*as.ligerDataset.ligerDataset*)*, 17
as.ligerDataset.ligerDataset, 17

bmmc, 19
brewer.pal, *13*, *111*, *120*, *122*

c.liger *(*liger-class*)*, 52
calcAgreement, 19
calcAlignment, 21
calcARI, 23
calcDatasetSpecificity, 24, *45*
calcNMI, 25
calcPurity, 27
cbind.ligerDataset *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
ccGeneHuman, 28
cellMeta *(*liger-class*)*, 52
cellMeta,liger,character-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
cellMeta,liger,missing-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
cellMeta,liger,NULL-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
cellMeta<- *(*liger-class*)*, 52
cellMeta<-,liger,character-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
cellMeta<-,liger,missing-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
centroidAlign, *14*, *15*, 29
closeAllH5, 31
commandDiff, 31
commands *(*liger-class*)*, 52
commands,liger-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
convertOldLiger, 32, *52*
coordinate, 33
coordinate,liger,character-method *(*coordinate*)*, 33
coordinate,ligerSpatialDataset,missing-method *(*coordinate*)*, 33
coordinate<- *(*coordinate*)*, 33
coordinate<-,liger,character-method *(*coordinate*)*, 33
coordinate<-,ligerSpatialDataset,missing-method *(*coordinate*)*, 33
createH5LigerDataset, 33, *36*, *37*
createLiger, *15*, *16*, 35, *184*
createLigerDataset, *18*, 37, *37*

DataFrame, *96*, *108*, *191*, *192*
dataset *(*liger-class*)*, 52
dataset,liger,character_OR_NULL-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52

dataset,liger,missing-method
(liger-class), 52
dataset,liger,numeric-method
(liger-class), 52
dataset<- (liger-class), 52
dataset<-,liger,character,ANY,ANY,matrixLike-method
(liger-class), 52
dataset<-,liger,character,missing,ANY,ligerDataset-method
(liger-class), 52
dataset<-,liger,character,missing,ANY,NULL-method
(liger-class), 52
datasets (liger-class), 52
datasets,liger-method (liger-class), 52
datasets<- (liger-class), 52
datasets<-,liger,logical-method
(liger-class), 52
datasets<-,liger,missing-method
(liger-class), 52
defaultCluster, *89*
defaultCluster (liger-class), 52
defaultCluster,liger-method
(liger-class), 52
defaultCluster<- (liger-class), 52
defaultCluster<-,liger,ANY,ANY,character-method
(liger-class), 52
defaultCluster<-,liger,ANY,ANY,factor-method
(liger-class), 52
defaultCluster<-,liger,ANY,ANY,NULL-method
(liger-class), 52
defaultDimRed (liger-class), 52
defaultDimRed,liger-method
(liger-class), 52
defaultDimRed<- (liger-class), 52
defaultDimRed<-,liger,character-method
(liger-class), 52
deg.marker, 38
deg.pw, 39
DFrame, *59*
dgCMatrix-class, *169*, *183*, *198*, *199*, *201*
dim,liger-method (liger-class), 52
dim,ligerDataset-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
dimnames,liger-method (liger-class), 52
dimnames,ligerDataset-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
dimnames<-,liger,list-method
(liger-class), 52
dimnames<-,ligerDataset,list-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
dimRed (liger-class), 52
dimRed,liger,index-method
(liger-class), 52
dimRed,liger,missing_OR_NULL-method
(liger-class), 52
dimRed<- (liger-class), 52
dimRed<-,liger,character,ANY,ANY,matrixLike-method
(liger-class), 52
dimRed<-,liger,index,ANY,ANY,NULL-method
(liger-class), 52
dimReds (liger-class), 52
dimReds,liger-method (liger-class), 52
dimReds<- (liger-class), 52
dimReds<-,liger,list-method
(liger-class), 52
download.file, *49*
downsample, 40, *149*, *150*
droplevels, *117*

exportInteractTrack, 41, *75*

factorGSEA, 42
featureMeta, *189*
featureMeta (ligerDataset-class), 64
featureMeta,ligerDataset-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
featureMeta<- (ligerDataset-class), 64
featureMeta<-,ligerDataset-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
fortify.liger (liger-class), 52

getFactorMarkers, 44, *112*
getH5File (ligerDataset-class), 64
getH5File,liger,ANY-method
(liger-class), 52
getH5File,ligerDataset,missing-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
getMatrix (ligerDataset-class), 64
getMatrix,liger,ANY,ANY,ANY-method
(liger-class), 52
getMatrix,ligerATACDataset,ANY,missing,missing-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
getMatrix,ligerDataset,ANY,missing,missing-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
getProportionMito, 46

H5Apply, 46
h5fileInfo (ligerDataset-class), 64

h5fileInfo,ligerDataset-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
h5fileInfo<- (ligerDataset-class), 64
h5fileInfo<-,ligerDataset-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
Heatmap, *6*, *12, 13*, *97*, *99*
HeatmapList, *6*, *98, 99*
HeatmapList-class, *120*, *122*

importBMMC (importPBMC), 48
importCGE (importPBMC), 48
importPBMC, 48
imputeKNN, 49, *71, 72*
is.newLiger, 50
isH5Liger, 51

length.liger (liger-class), 52
lengths.liger (liger-class), 52
liger, *14–16*, *18, 19*, *21*, *23*, *25–27*, *30, 31*, *33*, *35*, *41*, *43, 44*, *49–51*, *58*, *63, 64*, *68*, *70*, *72*, *76*, *79*, *81*, *85, 86*, *88–91*, *93, 94*, *97, 98*, *100*, *102*, *105*, *110*, *112*, *114*, *117*, *119*, *121*, *124*, *126*, *128*, *130*, *132*, *138–141*, *147–150*, *152, 153*, *155–157*, *159*, *162*, *164–166*, *169, 170*, *172, 173*, *176*, *178–180*, *183*, *185*, *188*, *190*, *192, 193*, *196*, *200, 201*
liger (liger-class), 52
liger-class, 52
ligerATACDataset, *38*, *50*, *72*, *79*, *140*
ligerATACDataset
(ligerATACDataset-class), 62
ligerATACDataset-class, 62
ligerCommand, *59*
ligerCommand (ligerCommand-class), 63
ligerCommand-class, 63
ligerDataset, *33–36*, *38*, *47*, *50*, *52*, *59*, *61, 62*, *68–70*, *78, 79*, *85*, *87, 88*, *90*, *140*, *151, 152*, *159*, *183*, *185*, *188, 189*, *191–195*, *200, 201*
ligerDataset (ligerDataset-class), 64
ligerDataset-class, 64
ligerMethDataset, *38*
ligerMethDataset
(ligerMethDataset-class), 69
ligerMethDataset-class, 69
ligerRNADataset
(ligerRNADataset-class), 69
ligerRNADataset-class, 69
ligerSpatialDataset, *33*, *38*, *130*
ligerSpatialDataset
(ligerSpatialDataset-class), 70
ligerSpatialDataset-class, 70
ligerToSeurat, 70
linkGenesAndPeaks, *41*, 71, *74*
louvainCluster-deprecated, 73

makeFeatureMatrix, 74
makeInteractTrack-deprecated, 74
makeRiverplot-deprecated, 75
mapCellMeta, 76
matrix, *33*
mergeDenseAll (mergeSparseAll), 78
mergeH5, 77
mergeSparseAll, 78
modalOf, 79

names.liger (liger-class), 52
names<-.liger (liger-class), 52
normalize, *50*, 79
normalizePeak (normalize), 79
normData (ligerDataset-class), 64
normData,liger-method (liger-class), 52
normData,ligerDataset-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
normData<- (ligerDataset-class), 64
normData<-,liger,ANY,ANY,H5D-method
(liger-class), 52
normData<-,liger,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL-method
(liger-class), 52
normData<-,ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,H5D-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
normData<-,ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL-method
(ligerDataset-class), 64
normPeak (rawPeak), 140
normPeak,liger,character-method
(rawPeak), 140
normPeak,ligerATACDataset,missing-method
(rawPeak), 140
normPeak<- (rawPeak), 140
normPeak<-,liger,character-method
(rawPeak), 140
normPeak<-,ligerATACDataset,missing-method
(rawPeak), 140

online_iNMF-deprecated, 82
optimizeALS, *163*, *178*

optimizeALS-deprecated, 83
optimizeNewData, 84, *87, 88*
optimizeNewK, *85*, 86, *88*
optimizeNewLambda, *85*, 87, *87*
optimizeSubset, 89

pbmc, 90
pbmcPlot, 91
plot.factorGSEA, 91
plot_grid, *102, 103*, *107*, *118*, *125*
plotBarcodeRank, 93
plotByDatasetAndCluster *(*plotDimRed*)*, 104
plotCellViolin, *7*, 94, *114*, *152*
plotClusterDimRed *(*plotDimRed*)*, 104
plotClusterFactorDot, 96
plotClusterGeneDot, 98
plotClusterGeneViolin, 100
plotClusterProportions *(*plotProportion*)*, 123
plotDatasetDimRed *(*plotDimRed*)*, 104
plotDensityDimRed, 102
plotDimRed, *11*, 104, *112*, *152*
plotEnhancedVolcano, 108
plotFactorDimRed *(*plotDimRed*)*, 104
plotFactorHeatmap, *12*
plotFactorHeatmap *(*plotGeneHeatmap*)*, 109
plotGeneDetectedViolin *(*plotGeneViolin*)*, 113
plotGeneDimRed *(*plotDimRed*)*, 104
plotGeneHeatmap, *12*, 109, *120*
plotGeneLoadingRank *(*plotGeneLoadings*)*, 111
plotGeneLoadings, 111
plotGeneViolin, 113
plotGODot, 115
plotGroupClusterDimRed, 117
plotMarkerHeatmap, 119
plotPairwiseDEGHeatmap, 121
plotPeakDimRed *(*plotDimRed*)*, 104
plotProportion, 123
plotProportionBar *(*plotProportion*)*, 123
plotProportionBox, 125
plotProportionDot *(*plotProportion*)*, 123
plotProportionPie *(*plotProportion*)*, 123
plotSankey, 127
plotSpatial2D, 129
plotTotalCountViolin *(*plotGeneViolin*)*, 113
plotVarFeatures, 131, *188*
plotVolcano, 132
print.factorGSEA, 134

quantile_norm-deprecated, 134
quantileAlignSNF, 135
quantileNorm, *14, 15*, *134*, 137

rawData *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
rawData,liger-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
rawData,ligerDataset-method *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
rawData<- *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
rawData<-,liger,ANY,ANY,H5D-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
rawData<-,liger,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
rawData<-,ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,H5D-method *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
rawData<-,ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL-method *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
rawPeak, 140
rawPeak,liger,character-method *(*rawPeak*)*, 140
rawPeak,ligerATACDataset,missing-method *(*rawPeak*)*, 140
rawPeak<- *(*rawPeak*)*, 140
rawPeak<-,liger,character-method *(*rawPeak*)*, 140
rawPeak<-,ligerATACDataset,missing-method *(*rawPeak*)*, 140
read10X, 141, *144*
read10XATAC *(*read10X*)*, 141
read10XFiles, 144
read10XH5, 145
read10XH5Delay *(*read10XH5*)*, 145
read10XH5Mem *(*read10XH5*)*, 145
read10XRNA *(*read10X*)*, 141
readH5AD, 146
readH5ADDelay *(*readH5AD*)*, 146
readH5ADMem *(*readH5AD*)*, 146
readLiger, 147
readSubset, 149
removeMissing, 150
removeMissingObs *(*removeMissing*)*, 150
restoreH5Liger, 151
restoreOnlineLiger *(*restoreH5Liger*)*, 151
retrieveCellFeature, 152
reverseMethData, 153, *184*

Rtsne, *176*
runCINMF, 154
runCluster, *89*, *127*, 156, *171*
runGeneralQC, *46*, 158
runGOEnrich, *116*, 160
runGSEA, 162
runINMF, *83*, *85–90*, *154*, 163, *166*, *168*, *170*
runIntegration, *14*, *30*, *59*, *82, 83*, *138*, *156*, 166, *176*, *179*
runMarkerDEG, *108*, *119*, *133*, *160*
runMarkerDEG *(*runPairwiseDEG*)*, 171
runMarkerDEG(), *39*
runOnlineINMF, *82*, *166*, 168, *198*
runPairwiseDEG, *108*, *121*, *133*, *160*, 171
runPairwiseDEG(), *40*
runTSNE, 176, *181*
runUINMF, *166*, 177
runUMAP, *177*, 179
runWilcoxon *(*runPairwiseDEG*)*, 171

scale_brewer, *9*, *113*, *124*, *127*
scale_colour_gradient2, *10*, *107*, *113*, *118*, *125*, *127*, *131*
scale_fill_viridis_c, *103*
scaleData *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
scaleData,liger,ANY-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
scaleData,ligerDataset,missing-method *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
scaleData<- *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
scaleData<-,liger,ANY,ANY,H5D-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
scaleData<-,liger,ANY,ANY,H5Group-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
scaleData<-,liger,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
scaleData<-,ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,H5D-method *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
scaleData<-,ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,H5Group-method *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
scaleData<-,ligerDataset,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL-method *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
scaleNotCenter, *69*, *155*, *164*, *166*, *178*, 181
scaleUnsharedData *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
scaleUnsharedData,liger,character-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
scaleUnsharedData,liger,numeric-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
scaleUnsharedData,ligerDataset,missing-method *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
scaleUnsharedData<- *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
scaleUnsharedData<-,liger,ANY,ANY,H5D-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
scaleUnsharedData<-,liger,ANY,ANY,H5Group-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
scaleUnsharedData<-,liger,ANY,ANY,matrixLike_OR_NULL-metho *(*liger-class*)*, 52
scaleUnsharedData<-,ligerDataset,missing,ANY,H5D-method *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
scaleUnsharedData<-,ligerDataset,missing,ANY,H5Group-metho *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
scaleUnsharedData<-,ligerDataset,missing,ANY,matrixLike_OR *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
selectBatchHVG, *183*, 184
selectGenes, *132*, *178*, *184*, 187
selectGenes(), *186*
selectGenesVST, 189
seuratToLiger *(*as.liger.dgCMatrix*)*, 15
show,liger-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
show,ligerCommand-method *(*ligerCommand-class*)*, 63
show,ligerDataset-method *(*ligerDataset-class*)*, 64
sub-liger, 190
sub-ligerDataset, 191
sub-sub-liger, 192
subsetH5LigerDataset *(*subsetLigerDataset*)*, 194
subsetLiger, *41*, *61*, *68*, *89*, *97*, *99*, *110*, *150*, *153*, *190, 191*, 192
subsetLigerDataset, *61*, *68*, *150, 151*, *191*, *193*, 194
subsetMemLigerDataset *(*subsetLigerDataset*)*, 194
suggestK, 195
summary.factorGSEA, 197

umap, *179*
updateLigerObject, 197

varFeatures, *183*, *189*
varFeatures *(*liger-class*)*, 52
varFeatures,liger-method *(*liger-class*)*, 52
varFeatures<- *(*liger-class*)*, 52

varFeatures<-,liger,ANY,character-method
(liger-class), 52
varUnsharedFeatures (liger-class), 52
varUnsharedFeatures,liger,ANY-method
(liger-class), 52
varUnsharedFeatures,ligerDataset,missing-method
(liger-class), 52
varUnsharedFeatures<- (liger-class), 52
varUnsharedFeatures<-,liger,ANY,ANY,character-method
(liger-class), 52
varUnsharedFeatures<-,ligerDataset,missing,ANY,character-method
(liger-class), 52
viridis, *6*, *9*, *13*, *97*, *99*, *107*, *110*, *113*, *120*,
122, *124*, *127*

writeH5, 198
writeH5AD, 200